

41  
2305/2

Systematische

# Englische Konversationschule.

~~72/5~~

Vokabel- und Hilfsbuch

für die

Lektüre und Vorkommnisse des täglichen Lebens

mit besonderer Berücksichtigung englischer Verhältnisse, auf Grund der  
neuen Lehrpläne und Lehrordnungen von 1891 und 1892

herausgegeben von

Dr. Karl Deutschbein,

Oberlehrer am Gymnasium zu Bwidau.

II. Teil: Every Day Life.

Zweite, verbesserte und vermehrte Auflage.

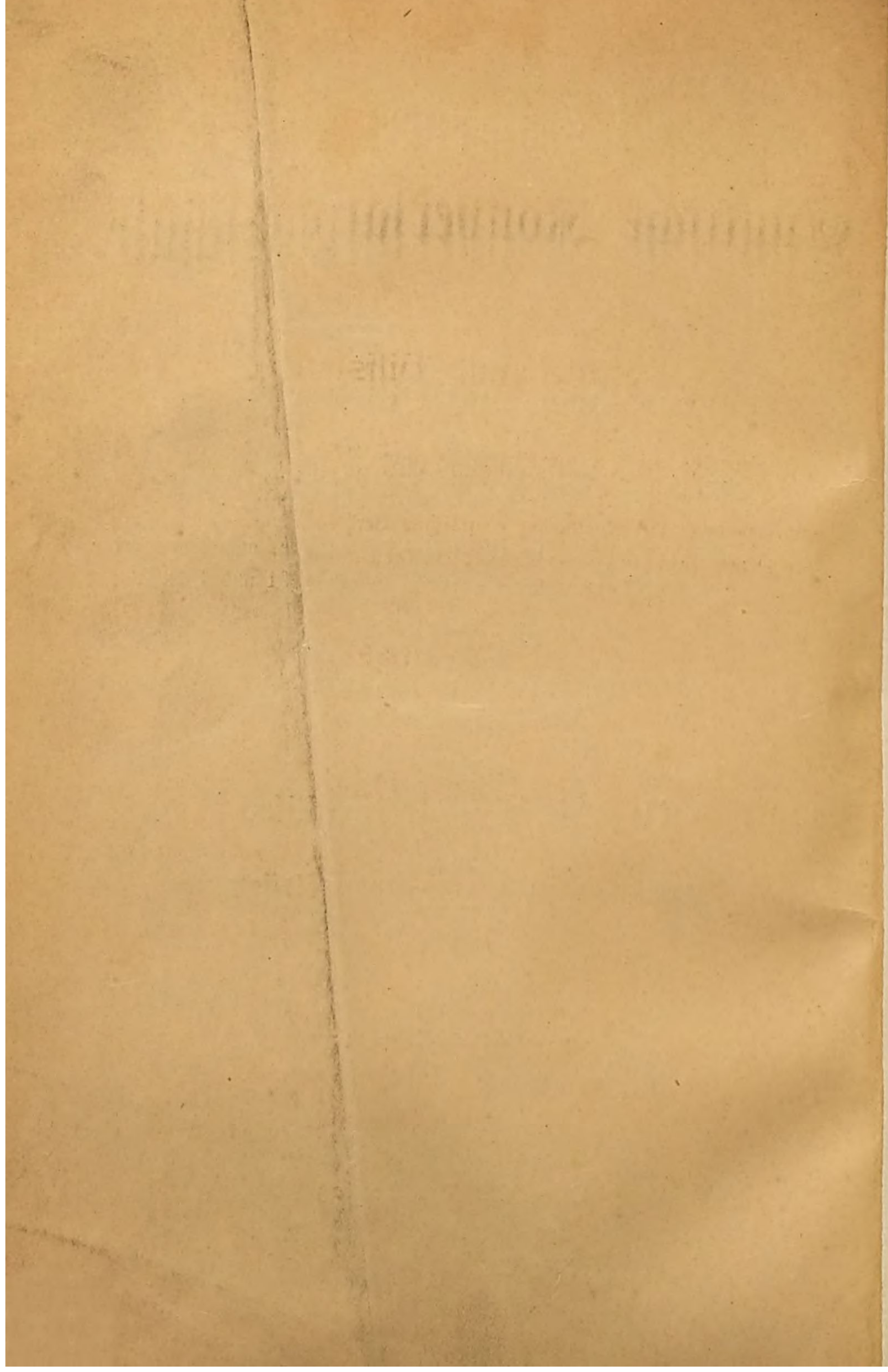


Göthen.

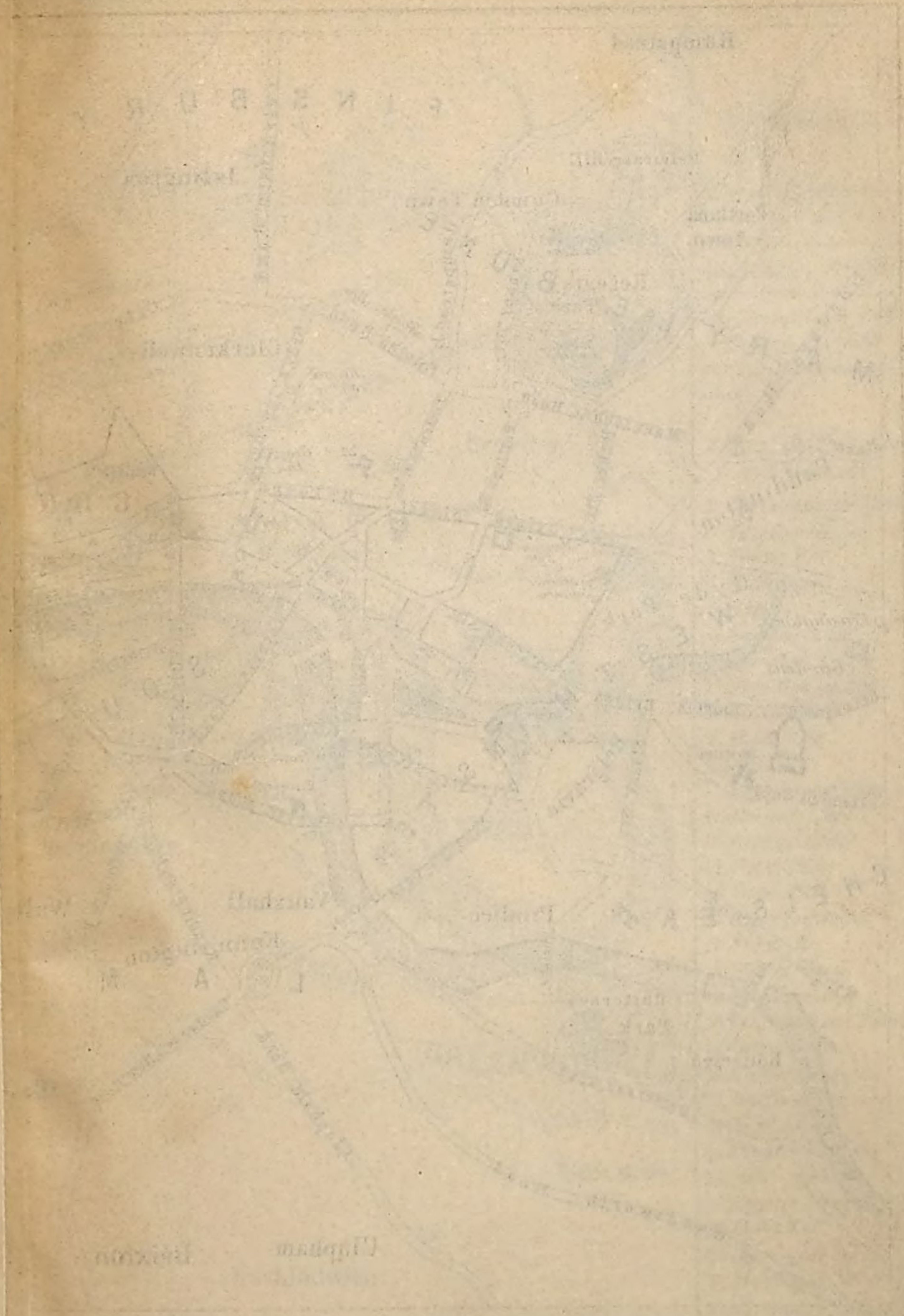
Otto Schulze Verlag.

1894.





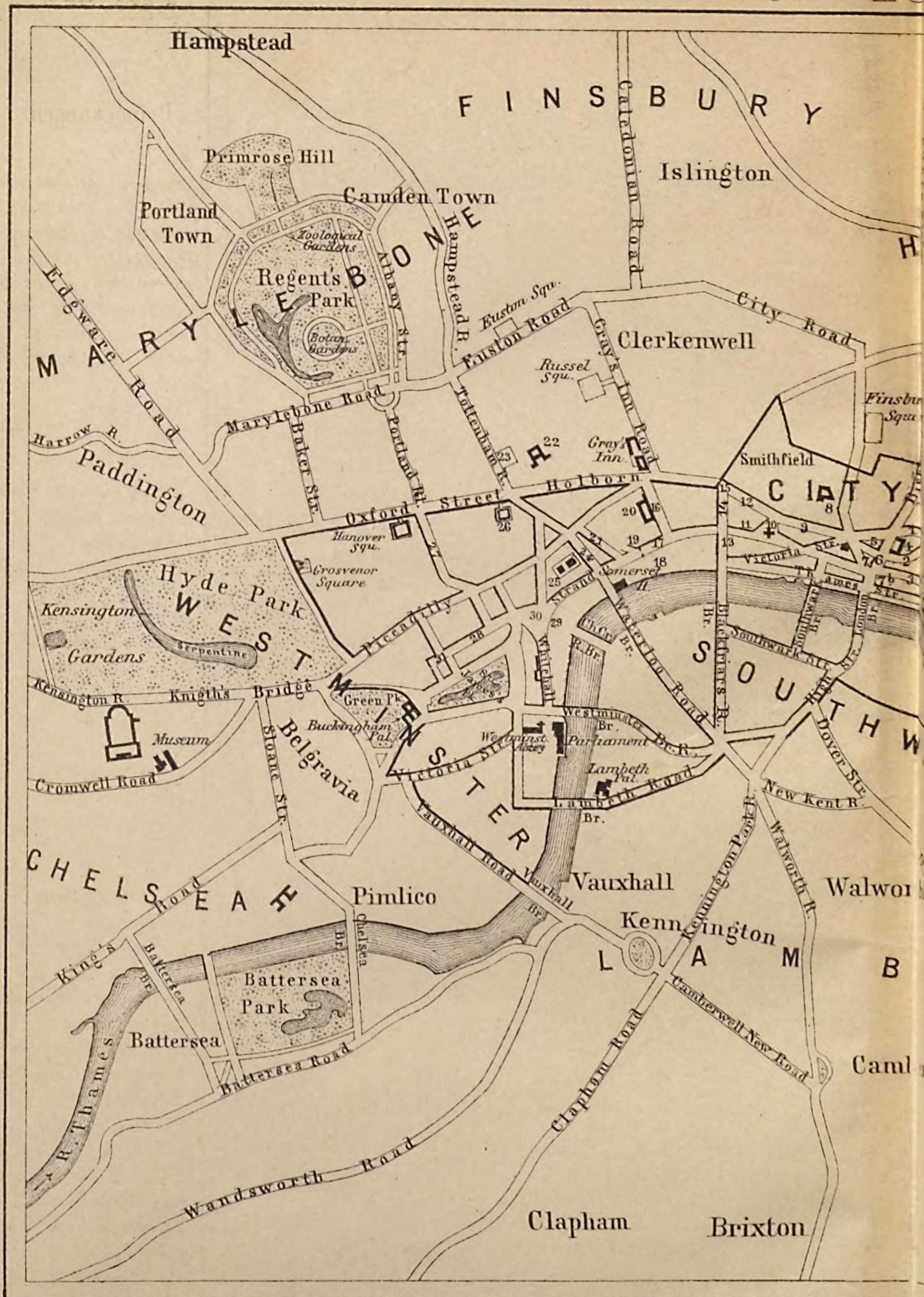




St. Ignace

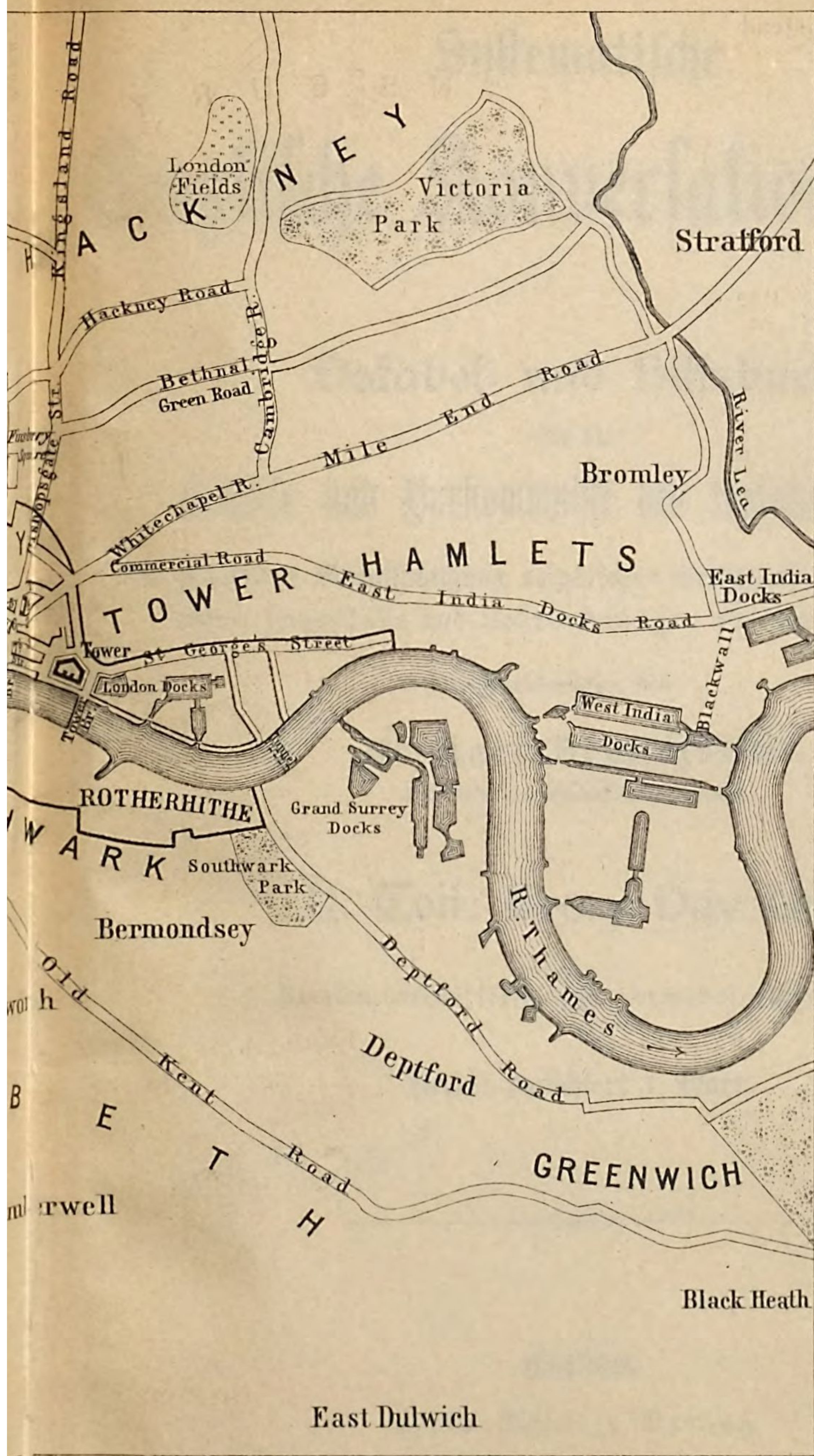


# PLAN VON LONDON





# LONDON.



## Bemerkungen:

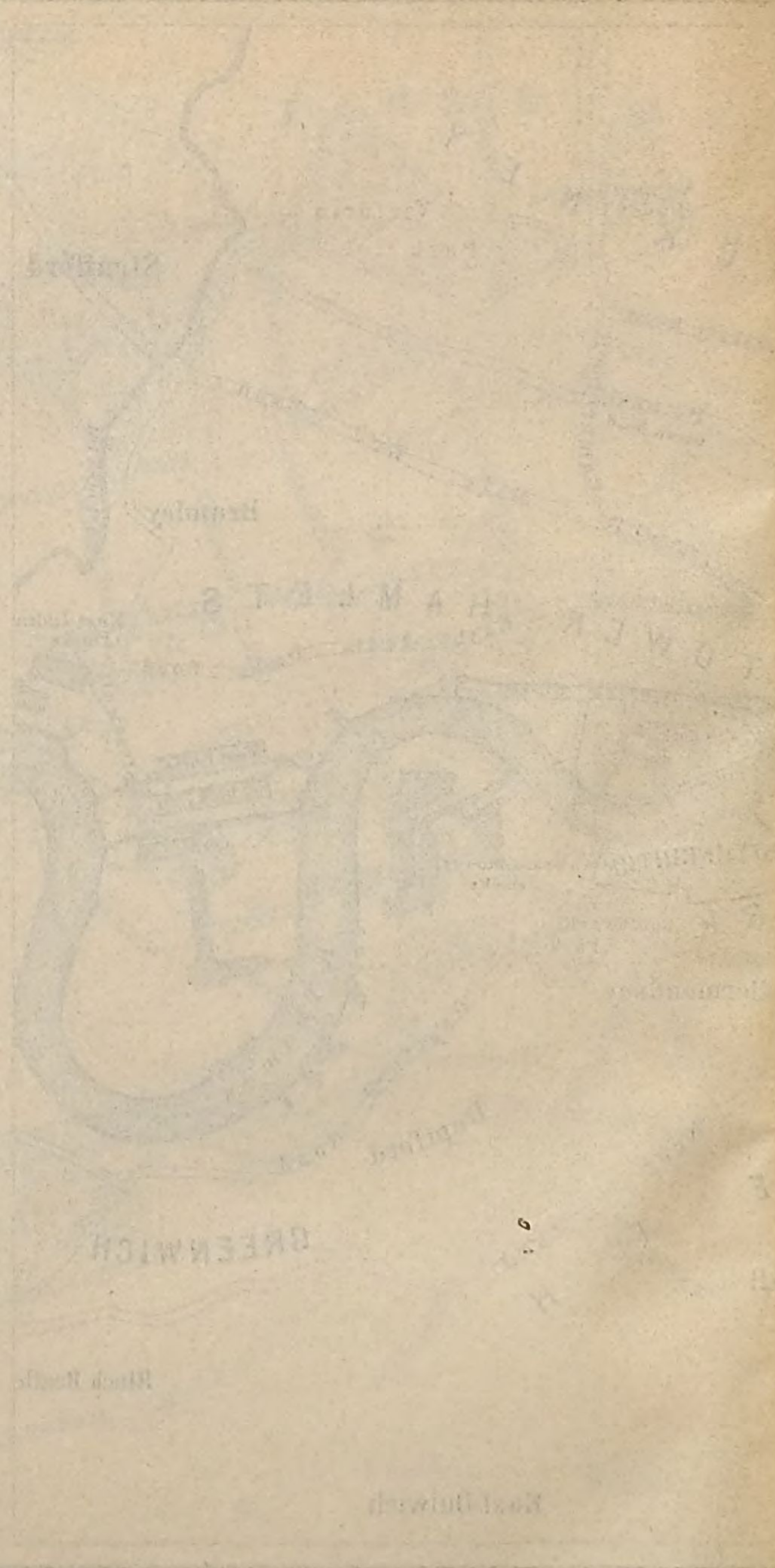
1. Die groß gedruckten Namen wie z.B. CITY HACKNEY bezeichnen Stadtteile, die kleiner gedruckten wie Islington, Hampstead frühere Dörfer, die jetzt mit zur Stadt gezogen sind.

## 2. Straßen, Plätze und Gebäude:

1. Threadneedle Street
2. Fenchurch Str.
3. Tower Str.
4. Exchange
5. Bank
6. Lombard Str.
7. Mansion House
- 7<sup>b</sup>. Fire Monument
8. Guild Hall
9. Cheapside
10. St Pauls
11. Paternoster Row
12. Newgate Str.
13. Ludgate Hill
14. Old Bailey
15. Snow Hill
16. Chancery Lane
17. Fleet Str.
18. Whitefriars
19. Temple Bar
20. Lincoln's Inn Field
21. Drury Lane
22. British Museum
23. Bedford Square
24. Bow Street
25. Covent Garden
26. Soho Square
27. Regent Street
28. Pall Mall
29. Charing Cross
30. Trafalgar Square.
31. St James's Palace.



1. The first of the...
2. The second of the...
3. The third of the...
4. The fourth of the...
5. The fifth of the...
6. The sixth of the...
7. The seventh of the...
8. The eighth of the...
9. The ninth of the...
10. The tenth of the...
11. The eleventh of the...
12. The twelfth of the...
13. The thirteenth of the...
14. The fourteenth of the...
15. The fifteenth of the...
16. The sixteenth of the...
17. The seventeenth of the...
18. The eighteenth of the...
19. The nineteenth of the...
20. The twentieth of the...
21. The twenty-first of the...
22. The twenty-second of the...
23. The twenty-third of the...
24. The twenty-fourth of the...
25. The twenty-fifth of the...
26. The twenty-sixth of the...
27. The twenty-seventh of the...
28. The twenty-eighth of the...
29. The twenty-ninth of the...
30. The thirtieth of the...





2305/2

Systematische

# Englische Konversationsschule.

## Vokabel- und Hilfsbuch

für die

Lektüre und Vorkommnisse des täglichen Lebens

mit besonderer Berücksichtigung englischer Verhältnisse, auf Grund der  
neuen Lehrpläne und Lehrordnungen von 1891 und 1892

herausgegeben von

Dr. Karl Deutschbein,

Oberlehrer am Gymnasium zu Gwidau.

## II. Teil: Every Day Life.

Zweite, verbesserte und vermehrte Auflage.

Preis: broschiert 1 Mark.

N<sup>o</sup> 721



Göthen.

Otto Schulze Verlag.

1894.



2. Aufl.

# Englische Grammatik

Handbuch

von

Dr. Carl Trautwein

mit besonderer Berücksichtigung englischer Rechtschreibung, auf Grund der  
neueren Regeln und Bestimmungen von 1801 und 1802

herausgegeben von

Dr. Carl Trautwein

Lehrer an der Universität zu Bonn

II. Teil: Every Day Life.

Erste Ausgabe und vermehrte Auflage.

Preis: 1 Thaler.



Bonn

Verlag von C. Trautwein

1801



# Inhaltsverzeichnis.

|                       |            |
|-----------------------|------------|
| A. Vorübung . . . . . | Seite<br>1 |
|-----------------------|------------|

## B. Lessons.

|                                                           |            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| 44. and 45. Lesson. The Family . . . . .                  | Seite<br>2 |
| 46. Lesson. The House . . . . .                           | 5          |
| 47. „ The Town . . . . .                                  | 8          |
| 48. „ Firing and Lighting . . . . .                       | 10         |
| 49. „ Household Furniture . . . . .                       | 11         |
| 50. „ The Meals . . . . .                                 | 14         |
| 51. „ Dinner-Things . . . . .                             | 16         |
| 52. „ A Dinner Party at Table . . . . .                   | 17         |
| 53. „ A Gentleman's Dress . . . . .                       | 19         |
| 54. „ A Lady's Dress . . . . .                            | 21         |
| 55. „ Diseases . . . . .                                  | 23         |
| 56. „ The Church . . . . .                                | 26         |
| 57. „ The Holidays . . . . .                              | 28         |
| 58. „ Time (An Invitation) . . . . .                      | 30         |
| 59. „ Age (In a Church-Yard) . . . . .                    | 32         |
| 60. „ The Universe (A Moonlight Night) . . . . .          | 33         |
| 61. „ The Weather . . . . .                               | 35         |
| 62. „ The Seasons . . . . .                               | 37         |
| 63. „ The Earth (A Walking-Tour) . . . . .                | 39         |
| 64. „ Space and Colours (A Sunset) . . . . .              | 41         |
| 65. „ The Theatre (A Visit to the Theatre) . . . . .      | 43         |
| 66. „ Amusements . . . . .                                | 44         |
| 67. „ The State (The Houses of Parliament) . . . . .      | 47         |
| 68. „ Justice (A Court of Justice) . . . . .              | 50         |
| 69. „ The Army (The Horse-Guards) . . . . .               | 52         |
| 70. „ The War (Reminiscences of an Army Doctor) . . . . . | 55         |
| 71. „ The Marine (A Visit to a Lighthouse) . . . . .      | 59         |
| 72. „ Travelling (A Journey to Scotland) . . . . .        | 61         |
| 73. „ Measures and Weights (Marketing) . . . . .          | 64         |
| 74. and 75. Lesson. Trades . . . . .                      | 67         |
| 76. Lesson. Commerce (Collecting a Debt) . . . . .        | 71         |
| 77. „ Continuation (A Successful Trader) . . . . .        | 73         |
| 78. „ Farming . . . . .                                   | 74         |
| 79. „ Gardening and Hunting . . . . .                     | 76         |
| 80. „ Various Abstract Notions . . . . .                  | 77         |



# IV

|                                                    |    |
|----------------------------------------------------|----|
| 81. Lesson. A Visit to London . . . . .            | 79 |
| 82. „ First Excursion in London . . . . .          | 82 |
| 83. „ Covent Garden . . . . .                      | 83 |
| 84. „ Westminster Abbey . . . . .                  | 84 |
| 85. „ The British Museum . . . . .                 | 86 |
| 86. „ Hyde Park . . . . .                          | 87 |
| 87. „ Regent's Park . . . . .                      | 88 |
| 88. „ The Crystal Palace . . . . .                 | 90 |
| 89. „ Going down the Thames to Greenwich . . . . . | 91 |
| 90. „ Kew Gardens . . . . .                        | 93 |

## C. Wort- und Sacheklärungen.

| A.                             |                          |                               |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Abend, 15, 8.                  | barrister, 50, 2.        | Bürger, 48, 5.                |
| Abgeordneter, 47, 5.           | Bauer, 75, 8.            | Busch, 42, 1.                 |
| Abhang, 40, 1.                 | bay, 40, 2.              | Busen, 40, 2.                 |
| account, 69, 6.                | beam, 34, 2.             | bush, 42, 1.                  |
| Adel, 47, 10. 48, 1. u. 48, 4. | Beamter, 9, 4.           | business, 6, 4.               |
| advice, advise, 81, 6.         | bear, 20, 2.             |                               |
| Anwalt, 50, 2.                 | big, 42, 5.              | C.                            |
| affliction, 79, 3.             | bill, 71, 6.             | Cabman, 82, 1.                |
| Albert Memorial, 87, 3.        | biscuit, 15, 4.          | call, 2, 1. u. 79, 2.         |
| alte Jungfer, 3, 2.            | bitte, 14, 4 u. 17, 2.   | camelopard, 89, 2.            |
| Anser (Redensarten), 61, 1.    | blanket, 12, 2.          | cape, 40, 5.                  |
| any, 2, 7.                     | Boden, 75, 1.            | cards, 45, 1.                 |
| Anzahl, 52, 1.                 | bonnet, 21, 5.           | Carlton House Terrace, 47, 3. |
| anziehen, 20, 3.               | border, 40, 10.          | carriage, 62, 6.              |
| a pair of spectacles, 21, 2.   | borough, 8, 1.           | carry, 20, 2.                 |
| Apotheker, 24, 4.              | bottom, 75, 1.           | cart, 62, 6.                  |
| appoint, 26, 5.                | boundary, 39, 2.         | celebrate, 29, 5.             |
| Arbeiter, 75, 7.               | bower, 76, 2.            | cemetery, 32, 2.              |
| arms, 58, 1.                   | bowling-green, 45, 2.    | chapel, 26, 9.                |
| Arzt, 25, 1.                   | Branntweine, 18, 7.      | Charing Cross, 80, 4.         |
| attorney, 50, 2.               | braten, 17, 5.           | check, 72, 4.                 |
| auf dem Lande, 8, 4.           | Bratenbrühe, 14, 2.      | chemise, 22, 2.               |
| aufstehen, 12, 3.              | Braut, Bräutigam, 4, 5.  | chemist, 24, 4.               |
| Augenblick, 31, 4.             | brawn, 15, 1.            | church-yard, 32, 2.           |
| Ausländer, 49, 4.              | bread, 15, 2.            | circus, 8, 3.                 |
| autumn, 37, 2.                 | breeches, 19, 8.         | citizen, 48, 5.               |
|                                | bride, bridegroom, 4, 5. | city, 8, 1.                   |
|                                | Brille, 21, 2.           | claret, 18, 1.                |
| B.                             | Brot, 15, 3.             | clergyman, 26, 3.             |
| Bahnhof, 61, 9.                | brother, 2, 8.           | clerk, 27, 5.                 |
| Band, 22, 4.                   | Bucht, 40, 2.            | clock, 19, 4.                 |
| Banfanweisung, 72, 4.          | bucket, 13, 5.           | cloister, 27, 6.              |
| baronet, 48, 4.                | Burg, 8, 1.              | cloth, 18, 2.                 |



coach, 62, 8.  
 coast, 39, 8.  
 cockney, 77, 2.  
 colour, 42, 3.  
 company, 69, 2.  
 convent, 27, 6.  
 cook, 4, 9.  
 corporation, 9, 4.  
 corridor, 6, 1.  
 cottage, 5, 5.  
 count, 47, 9.  
 Cousin, Cousine, 4, 2.  
 Covent Garden, 80, 5.  
 crop, 38, 1.  
 cupboard, 6, 5.  
 curate, 26, 3.

## D.

Dachboden, 75, 1.  
 dale, 40, 8.  
 Damm, 41, 4.  
 danke, 14, 4.  
 daughter-in-law, 4, 8.  
 Deich, 41, 4.  
 descent, 40, 1.  
 desert, 16, 6.  
 disease, 23, 1.  
 doctor, 25, 1.  
 Dom, dome, 26, 2.  
 done, 17, 5.  
 don't, 11, 1.  
 down-trains, 65, 4.  
 Dreikönigstag, 29, 6.  
 dress, 19, 1.  
 dwell in, on, 6, 2.

## E.

Earl, 47, 9.  
 Ehefrau, Ehemann, 3, 3.  
 Eier, 15, 6. u. 7.  
 Eigelb, 16, 2.  
 Eimer, 13, 5.  
 Elgin, 86, 2.  
 enemy, 57, 1.  
 englische Maße und Gewichte,  
 65, 2. 5. 6. 7. und 66,  
 1. 2. 3. 5. 8. 10.

englisches Geld, 71, 7. 8. 9.  
 und 72, 1. 3. 4. 6. 7.  
 entzünden, 28, 1.  
 Erbschaft, 3, 6.  
 Ernte, 38, 1.  
 Erzbischof, 26, 4.  
 es fehlt, 65, 1.  
 es thut nichts, 13, 2.  
 evening, 15, 8.

## F.

Farbe, 42, 3.  
 farmer, 75, 8.  
 father-in-law, 4, 8.  
 feiern, 29, 5.  
 Feiertag, 28, 3.  
 Feind, 57, 1.  
 fever, Fieber, 24, 4.  
 flee, 57, 3.  
 Fleischbrühe, 14, 2.  
 Fleischsorten, 15, 5.  
 floor, 75, 1.  
 Flut, 41, 3.  
 fly, 57, 3.  
 fog, 35, 5.  
 food, 74, 7.  
 (I) forget, 12, 1.  
 fortune, 31, 3.  
 Frack, 20, 1.  
 Frau, Fräulein, 2, 4; 82, 4.  
 freeze, 36, 1.  
 Fremder, 49, 4.  
 friend, 57, 1.  
 frontier, 40, 10.  
 Fußboden 75, 1.  
 Futter, 74, 7.

## G.

Gasthaus, 8, 5.  
 Gegend, 8, 4.  
 gehen, — nach, — vor, 19, 5.  
 Geistlicher, 26, 3.  
 Gemüse, 14, 9.  
 Genesender, 25, 2.  
 gentry, 48, 4.  
 Geschäft, 6, 4.  
 Geschwister, 2, 8.  
 gestern abend, 30, 11.

get up, 12, 3.  
 Gewächshaus, 93, 3.  
 Giraffe, 89, 2.  
 Glas, glass, 26, 8.  
 Glück, 31, 3.  
 Glückwünsche, 28, 5.  
 Good-bye, 31, 8.  
 got, 2, 6.  
 Gottesacker, 32, 2.  
 govern, government, 49, 3.  
 Grab, 32, 1.  
 Graf, 47, 9.  
 gravy, 14, 2.  
 green-house, 91, 2.  
 Greis, 2, 12.  
 Grenze, 40, 10.  
 groß, 42, 5.  
 ground, 75, 1.  
 Grundherr, 32, 3.  
 Gründonnerstag 29, 9.

## H.

Hafen, 40, 4.  
 hall, Halle, 6, 1.  
 Hansom, 81, 7.  
 happiness, 31, 3.  
 hat, 21, 5.  
 Hauptwerke von Dichtern,  
 85, 2. 3. 4. 5. 6.  
 heaven, 42, 4.  
 Heimatland, 49, 7.  
 heißen, 2, 1.  
 Hemd, — Frauen-, Herren-,  
 22, 2.  
 Herbst, 38, 1.  
 Herr, 2, 4.  
 heute abend, 15, 8.  
 Himmel, 42, 4.  
 Hock, 18, 3.  
 Horse-guard, 52, 2.  
 Hosen, 19, 8.  
 hotel, 8, 5.  
 hot-house, 82, 1.  
 Hufeisen, 67, 3.  
 Husten, 24, 1.  
 Hut, 21, 5.



# VI

## I.

I am cold, 36, 1.  
illness, 23, 1.  
incense, 28, 1.  
inn, 8, 5.

## J.

Joint 14, 8.  
joke, 77, 4.  
judgment, 50, 3.

## K.

Kapelle, 26, 9.  
Karte, Land-, 46, 1.  
Kartenspiel, 46, 2.  
Kaufmann, 73, 2.  
Kegel, 45, 2.  
Kirchhof, 32, 2.  
kleiden, Kleidung, 19, 1.  
Kloster, 27, 6.  
knight, 48, 4.  
kochen, 17, 5.  
Kompott, 18, 2.  
Kosename, 2, 10.  
Krankheit, 23, 1.  
Kriegsmarine, 60, 5.  
Küste, 39, 8.  
Kutsche, 62, 8.

## L.

Lady (Titel), 47, 10.  
Laientum, laity, 27, 1.  
Landpartie, 34, 4.  
Landschaft, }  
ländlich, } 8, 4.  
large, 42, 5.  
Laube, 76, 2.  
lawyer, 50, 4.  
layman, 27, 1.  
Lebensmittel, 16, 1.  
Leinwand, 22, 5.  
likeness, 81, 4.  
linen, 22, 5.  
live, 2, 2.  
lobby, 6, 1.  
local authorities, 9, 4.  
Lord, 32, 3. und 47, 10.

Lord Mayor, 9, 3.  
lot, 10, 1; 29, 7.  
Lower House — the, 47, 8.

## M.

Madam, 17, 3.  
magistrate, 9, 4.  
man, 3, 3.  
map, 46, 1.  
margin, 39, 7.  
marine, 60, 5.  
Marktſchreier, 44, 4.  
maundy, 29, 9.  
mayor, 9, 3.  
Meeresküſte, 39, 8.  
member, 47, 5.  
Messrs., 69, 1.  
mich friert, 36, 1.  
Mieter, 5, 9.  
minute, 20, 6.  
mist, 35, 5.  
moment, 31, 4.  
mother-in-law, 4, 3. u. 4, 8.  
Mrs. N. 84, 1.  
municipal delegate, 9, 4.

## N.

Nacht, 31, 5.  
Nachtſch, 16, 6.  
Nahrung, 73, 1.  
native, — country, 49, 5.  
navy, 60, 5.  
Nebel, 35, 5.  
neulich, 44, 1.  
Neuvermählte, 4, 5.  
night, — the whole, every,  
31, 5.  
nobility, 47, 10.

## O.

Oberbürgermeiſter, 9, 3.  
old maid, 3, 2.  
old man, 2, 12.

## P.

Pächter, 5, 9.  
pail, 13, 5.  
pail-mail, 81, 2.

pantaloon, 19, 8.  
passage, 6, 1.  
patent, patentiert, 21, 1.  
Pfarrer, 26, 3.  
photo, Photographie, 83, 4.  
Piccadilly, 81, 1.  
pickles, 18, 2.  
pick-nick, 34, 5.  
Platz, 8, 3.  
play, 44, 5.  
pleasant, 40, 6.  
please, 14, 4.  
pork-pie, 15, 1.  
port, 40, 4.  
portmanteau, 19, 2.  
pretty, 2, 5.  
provision, 16, 1.  
public-house, 8, 5.  
public-prosecutor, 52, 3.  
pull off, 20, 3.  
punishment, 52, 2.  
put on, 20, 3.

## Q.

Quelle, 40, 7.

## R.

Rage, 78, 3.  
Rand, 39, 7.  
rather, 2, 5.  
ray 34, 2.  
Rechnung, 71, 6.  
Rechtsanwalt, 50, 2.  
rector, 26, 3.  
Regent's Park, 88, 1.  
Regierungszeit, reign, 49, 3.  
Reiſe, 62, 7.  
Reiſekoſter, 19, 2.  
Rekonvaleszent, 25, 2.  
relations, relatives, 4, 6.  
ride, 62, 1.  
rise, 12, 3. und 34, 1.  
Ritter, 48, 4.

## S.

Safe, 13, 4.  
Sandwich, 14, 1.  
sauce, 14, 2.



Scharlach, 23, 2.  
 Schatten, 34, 3.  
 Schaufel, 45, 3.  
 Scherz, 79, 1.  
 schimpfen, 2, 1.  
 Schrecken, 78, 2.  
 Schwiegermutter, 4, 3.  
 Seefüste, 39, 8.  
 sentence, 50, 3.  
 servant, 4, 9.  
 set, 34, 1.  
 setzen, 67, 4.  
 shade, 34, 3.  
 shirt, 22, 2.  
 shopkeeper, 73, 2.  
 shore, 39, 8.  
 sick, sickness, 23, 1.  
 side-table, 16, 5.  
 Sir, 48, 4.  
 sister, 2, 8.  
 skittles, 45, 2.  
 slob, 40, 1.  
 solicitor, 50, 2.  
 Somerset House, 82, 4.  
 Sonnenschirm, 22, 1.  
 Sorge, sorrow, 79, 3.  
 source, 40, 4.  
 spectacles, 21, 2.  
 Spiel, 44, 5.  
 spinster, 3, 2.  
 spirits, 18, 7.  
 Spitze, 79, 1.  
 Sprecher, 47, 4.  
 square, 8, 3.  
 Staatsanwalt, 52, 3.  
 Staatsbürger, 48, 5.  
 Stadtrat, 9, 4.  
 Stadtverordneter, 9, 5.  
 station, 61, 9.  
 sterling, 72, 6.  
 story, 5, 8.  
 Strafe, 52, 2.

Strahl, 34, 2.  
 stranger, 49, 4.  
 Strauch, 42, 1.  
 Strich (Land), 40, 10.  
 superintendent, 72, 5.  
 Suppe, 14, 6.  
 swing, 45, 3.

## T.

Table-utensils, 16, 4.  
 take, 19, 10.  
 take off, 20, 3.  
 tall, 42, 5.  
 tape, 22, 4.  
 Taschenuhr, 19, 4.  
 tavern, 8, 5.  
 tenant, 5, 9.  
 terror, 78, 2.  
 Thal, 40, 8.  
 thank, 14, 4.  
 Thürklopfer, 6, 3.  
 tide, 41, 3.  
 Tischgerät, 16, 4.  
 tomb, 32, 1.  
 to-night, 15, 8.  
 town, 8, 1.  
 town-councillor, 9, 4.  
 tradesman, 73, 2.  
 tragen, 19, 2.  
 Treppengeländer, 6, 6.  
 trunk, 19, 2.  
 Turmuhr, 19, 4.

## U.

überfluten, 64, 4.  
 Ufer, 39, 8.  
 umbrella, 22, 1.  
 untergehen, 34, 1.  
 Unterhaus, 47, 8.  
 up-trains, 65, 4.  
 Urteil, 50, 3.

## V.

Vaterland, 49, 5.  
 Verdienst, 16, 6.  
 verlobt, versprochen, 4, 4.  
 vestibule, 6, 1.  
 Vetter, 4, 2.  
 vicar, 26, 3.  
 Victoria Regia, 94, 2.  
 Vollmond, 34, 4.  
 volunteer, 55, 3.  
 Vorgebirge, 40, 4.  
 Vorhalle, Vorhaus, 6, 1.  
 voyage, 62, 7.

## W.

Waffe, 58, 1.  
 Wagen, } 62, 6.  
 wagon, }  
 Wäsche, 22, 5.  
 Wasserflasche, 13, 1.  
 watch, 19, 4.  
 Wednesday, 29, 8.  
 Whitehall, 92, 3.  
 Whitsuntide, 29, 10.  
 Wirtshaus, 8, 5.  
 wohnen, 6, 2.  
 Wohnung, 5, 3.  
 woman, 3, 3.  
 workman, 75, 7.  
 Wurstspeisen, 15, 1.  
 Wut, 78, 3.

## Y.

Yellow, yolk, 16, 2.  
 yon, yonder, 9, 2.  
 yesterday evening, 30, 11.

## Z.

Zentner, 65, 2.  
 ziemlich, 2, 5.  
 Züge, 65, 4.  
 Zwieback, 15, 4.







# A. Vorübung.

## Musterwörter.

1) \*māde (gemacht), mē (mich), fīne (fein), gō (gehen), ūse (gebrauchen),  
m̄y (mein).

2) \*āt (an, zu), lēt (lassen), in (in), nōt (nicht), büt (aber),  
s̄yntax (Satzlehre).

3) \*rāre (selten), her (ihr), fīrst (erst), for (für), hurt (verleßen).

4) glāss<sup>1)</sup> (Glas), — — sōn<sup>5)</sup> (Sohn), füll<sup>6)</sup> (voll).

5) wāll<sup>2)</sup> (Wand), — — wōrd<sup>7)</sup> (Wort), —

6) wāsh<sup>3)</sup> (waschen), — — do (thun), —

7) fār<sup>4)</sup> (fern), — — — —

8) fēw (wenige); 9) vōice (Stimme), boŷ (Knabe); 10) hōuse (Haus),  
nōw (nun).

11) ġeneral (ġ = j) (allgemein); 12) plēasure (s = zh) (Vergnügen);  
13) thēn (dh) (dann); 14) knōw (kennen, wissen).

15) A'von (A = ā); 16) Ad'jective (A = ä)<sup>8)</sup>.

\*) Unter N. 1 haben die Vokalzeichen den sogenannten langen oder alphabetschen Laut, der sich in betonten offenen oder gedehnten Silben findet; unter N. 2 den kurzen, unter N. 3 den durch r beeinflussten Laut.

1) Ein verschieden gesprochener Laut vor f, n, s + Konsonant. 2) Vor zwei l. 3) Nach qu und w. 4) Namentlich vor einfachem r. 5) Namentlich vor m und n. 6) Namentlich nach Lippenlauten. 7) Zwischen w und r. 8) Ein groß geschriebener Vokal mit unmittelbar nachfolgendem Accent ist lang, in allen andern Fällen kurz.



## B. Lessons.

### Forty-fourth Lesson.

#### The Family.

1. A. What is your name<sup>1)</sup>? B. My name is Jöhn (I am called John).

A. Are your pärents still living (still alive)<sup>2)</sup>? B. Yes, Sir, I am häppy to say they are<sup>3)</sup>.

A. How are your fâther and möther<sup>4)</sup>? B. (I) thank you, my father is very well (pretty well), but I am sorry to say my mother is râther<sup>5)</sup> poorly.

|                        |                         |                        |
|------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| Jöhn Jöhan             | I am glad es freut mich | I am sorry es thut mir |
| alive lebend, lebendig | pretty (e = i) ziemlich | leid                   |
| glad froh              | sorry traurig, betrübt  | poorly unpäßlich.      |

2. A. Have you got<sup>6)</sup> any<sup>7)</sup> bröthers and sisters<sup>8)</sup>? B. I have three brothers and five sisters; so you see we are a large family.

A. How old are you? B. I am ten years old, but my äldest<sup>9)</sup> brother is over twenty and my youngest sister is four years old.

A. What are the names of all your brothers and sisters? B. Their names are: Jāmes (Jimmy, Jim<sup>10)</sup>), Chârles (Chârley, Charlie), and William (Willy); Mārgaret (Māggie, Mag, Meg, Peg, Peggy), Märy (Möilly, Moll, Poll, Pöilly), Elizabêth (Lizzy, Bëtty, Betsey, Bess), Hêlen (Nêlly, Nell), and Cāroline (Cärry, Carrie).

3. A. Are your grāndpärents still living? B. Not all of them, Sir, one of my grāndfathers<sup>11)</sup> and both my grāndmöthers<sup>11)</sup> are dead; but my öther grandfather still enjoys perfect health and is a very chēerful old man<sup>12)</sup>, whom I like to see as öften as I can. But the most remārtable thing is that his father is still alive, so that

1) „Wie heißen Sie?“ Nicht etwa englisch: *how* are you called? Dagegen *what* are you called was sind Sie, was für einen Beruf haben Sie? He called me names er gab mir Namen, schimpfte mich. 2) Nicht etwa: have you still parents, oder do your parents still live? 3) Vgl. zu dieser Antwort „Grammatische Ergänzungen“ 18, 2 und „Syntax“, N. 104, Anm. 4) „Wie geht es Ihrem Herrn Vater und Ihrer Frau Mutter?“ „Herr“, „Frau“ und „Fräulein“ bleiben vor Verwandtschaftsnamen (und Titeln) unübersetzt. 5) pretty ziemlich = einigermaßen, beinahe ganz (mit positivem Sinn); rather ziemlich = ein wenig (mit negativem Sinn). 6) got nach to have ist oft pleonastisch (überflüssig) im Englischen. 7) any hier im Sinne des französischen Teilungsartikels. 8) brother(s) and sister(s) Geschwister, vgl. franz. frère(s) et soeur(s). 9) Warum nicht oldest? vgl. S. 18, Syn. und „Elementarbuch“, N. 98. 10) Die in Klammern stehenden Namen sind Diminutivformen (Verkleinerungsformen), Kosenamen, die in der Familiensprache fast ausschließlich gebraucht werden. 11) nicht mit einem Bindestrich oder Apostroph wie im Französischen grand-père (grand'mère). 12) old man Greis.



have a **great-grandfather** and am not only a **grandchild** (grandson), but even a **great-grandchild** (great-grandson).

A. Do you know what an orphan is? B. Yes, Sir, it is a poor child, who is bereft of his parents or at least has only one parent living.

A. What must such a child have instead of his parents? B. A **guardian**, who has to take care of his ward.

|                   |            |                  |             |                |              |
|-------------------|------------|------------------|-------------|----------------|--------------|
| gränd'pārents     | Großeltern | gränd'child      | (gränd'son) | at least       | wenigstens   |
| enjoy             | genießen   | Enkel            |             | instead of     | anstatt      |
| cheerful          | heiter     | orphan           | Waise       | guardian       | Vormund      |
| great-grandfather | Urs        | berēave (berēft) | berauben    | take care (of) | forgen (für) |
| großvater         |            | (beraubt(e))     |             | ward           | Mündel.      |

#### Forty-fifth Lesson.

#### The Family. Continuation.

1. A. I suppose you have also got some **uncles** and **aunts**. B. You are right, Sir, I have two uncles and four aunts.

A. How is it<sup>1)</sup> that you have more aunts than uncles? B. Well, Sir, it is not difficult to explain that. One of my aunts did not marry at all, she is what we call in English a **maiden aunt** (an old maid, spinster<sup>2)</sup>); and the other is a **widow**. Her **husband**<sup>3)</sup> died some years ago<sup>4)</sup> and left her with five **children**, three **sons** (**boys**) and two **daughters** (**girls**).

A. Had your uncle made his will? B. Yes, Sir, he had, he bequeathed<sup>5)</sup> all his property to his wife and after her death to his children in equal portions.

A. What would have happened, if he had died without a **will**? B. According to the English law, all the landed property<sup>6)</sup> would have fallen to (devolved on) the eldest son, and the other (children) **heirs** would have had nothing of this **inheritance**.

|                     |                 |                     |                  |             |               |
|---------------------|-----------------|---------------------|------------------|-------------|---------------|
| aunt                | Tante           | widow               | Witwe            | landed pr.  | Grundbesitz   |
| marry               | heiraten        | widower             | Witwer           | fall (to)   | anheimfallen, |
| marriage            | Heirat, Ehe     | child, pl. children | Kind             | devolve     | übergehen     |
| not at all          | überhaupt nicht | will                | Wille, Testament | (on)        | (an)          |
| maid(en)            | Mädchen, Jung-  | bequeath            | vermachen        | heir (ä)    | Erbe          |
| frau, Jungfer, Magd |                 | happen              | geschehen        | inheritance | Erbchaft.     |
| husband (s=z)       | Ehemann         | property            | Eigentum         |             |               |

1) „Wie geht das zu?“ 2) old maid = alte Jungfer; spinster (eigentlich Spinnerin), fast nur noch in der Gerichts- und Kirchensprache. 3) Nicht etwa (her) man für Ehemann, oder (his) wom'an (o=u) für Ehefrau. 4) vor einigen Jahren; vgl. L. 46, B. 5 und N. 168, 2. 5) familiär: left. 6) Von dem übrigen Eigentum fällt ein Drittel der etwaigen Witwe zu, die anderen zwei Drittel den hinterlassenen Kindern gemeinsam und zwar zu gleichen Teilen.



2. A. Are your two uncles married? B. Yes, Sir, they are; one has even a second wife<sup>1)</sup>. He was a **widower** for some time; but as my **cōsins**<sup>2)</sup> were still too young to be without a mother, he was obliged to marry again. But I am glad to say that my aunt treats her **stēpchildren** very kindly, so that the latter do not at all feel that they have a **stēpmother**<sup>3)</sup>.

trēat behandeln  
step- Stief-

stēpchild Stiefkind  
kind gütig

feel fühlen, merken.

3. A. Are any of your cousins already married? B. No, Sir, but two of them are **engāged**<sup>4)</sup>, (nā mely) my cousin<sup>2)</sup> Richard (Dick) and my cousin<sup>2)</sup> Jane.

A. Do you know his **intēded** (wife) and her **intended** (hūs-band<sup>5)</sup>)? B. Not yet, Sir, but I hope I shall get an invitātion to the **wēdding**, as soon as the **bans** (banns) are **pūblished**. Then I shall know my new **relātions** (**rēlatives**<sup>6)</sup>); for I am sure the wedding will be a great feast or "high feast", as the mēaning of the German word "Hochzeit" is.

A. Who else will be at the wedding besīdes you? B. I think my uncle will invīte all his relations, not ōnly those who are **con-nēcted** with him **by blood**<sup>7)</sup>, as his brothers and sisters, his **nēphews** and **nieces**, but also those who are **relāted** to him **by affinity**, such as his **brothers-in-law**, **sisters-in-law**, and so on<sup>8)</sup>.

engāge verpflichten, verlo-  
intēd beabsichtigen [ben  
intēded Verlobter, Zu-  
künftiger, Bräutigam,  
invīte einladen [Braut  
invitātion Einladung  
wēdding Hochzeit  
bans (pl.) Aufgebot

pūblish }  
proclāim } veröffentlichen  
to publish the bans (firch-  
lich) aufbieten  
relātion }  
rēlative } Verwandter  
relāted(to) verwandt(mit)  
sure (su = sho) sicher

feast Fest  
mēaning Bedeutung [außer  
besīdes (1. s = ß) neben,  
nēph'ew (ph = v, oder f)  
niēce Nichte [Neffe  
affinity Schwägerschaft  
brōther-in-law Schwager  
sister-in-law Schwägerin.

4. A. How many **servants**<sup>9)</sup> have you got? B. Five, Sir, two **man-servants**, and three **fēmale-servants** (**wom'an-servants**), namely a **coachman** and a **foot'man**, a **cook**<sup>9)</sup>, a house-maid (**māid-servant**), and a nurse (**nursery-maid**).

1) Vgl. S. 3, 3. 2) „Bettern und Cousinen“. Ist aus dem Zusammenhange nicht zu ersehen, ob mit cousin nur männliche, oder nur weibliche Personen gemeint sind, so muß man den Eigennamen hinzusetzen, wie hernach cousin Dick, cousin Jane. Man könnte auch male und fēmale vor cousin setzen, doch vermeidet man das lieber, da es ungebildet klingt. 3) auch mother-in-law, welches eigentlich „Schwiegermutter“ heißt. 4) oder prōm'ised (versprochen) in marriage, noch feierlicher betrothed. 5) brīde und brīdegroom für „Braut“ und „Bräutigam“ sagt man nur am Hochzeitstage (oder an den nächsten Tagen), also die „Neuvermählten“. 6) relations allgemeiner als relatives. 7) d. h. „Blutsverwandte“. 8) nämlich father-in-law, mother-in-law, son-in-law, daughter-in-law. 9) servant und cook sind ähnlich zu behandeln wie cousins, vgl. S. 52, 2 und N. 75, 2.



A. Do you rē'ally want so many servants all the year round?

B. We do, Sir; but I may add that the nursery-maid will soon be dismissed, as my youngest sister, who is, as I told you before, three years old, does not want a spēcial attendant any longer.

|                           |                          |           |                                 |     |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|-----------|---------------------------------|-----|
| cōach Kutſche             | nurse (Amme)             | Kinder=   | all the year round              | daß |
| cōachman Kutſcher         | wärterin                 |           | ganze Jahr hindurch             |     |
| foot'man Bedienter        | nursery Pſlege,          | Kinder=   | dismiss entlassen               |     |
| cook(ü)Koch, Köchin [chen | ſtube                    |           | [chen spēcial beſonder [Diener. |     |
| māid-servant Dienſtmäd=   | nursery-maid Kinder-mäd= | attendant | Gefolge, Wärter,                |     |

#### Forty-sixth Lesson.

#### The House<sup>1)</sup>. (Building a House).

1. A. I am thinking of building (I intēnd to build) a **house** for myself. B. Do you mean to live<sup>2)</sup> in it yoursēlf? I thought you had such cōmfortable **lōdgings**<sup>3)</sup>.

A. Yes, but I only took them for a short time, until I could decīde where to build my house. We would rāther live<sup>2)</sup> in quite a **small**<sup>4)</sup> **cōttage**<sup>5)</sup> of our own than **inhābit**<sup>2)</sup> the fine **apārtements** that we are obliged to share with öthers; for you know we English (people, folks) like to have a house to oursēlves, to make it our castle<sup>6)</sup>. B. But you have your **privāte rooms**, a **pārLOUR** or **sitting-room**, a **dīning-room**, and a **drawing-room**<sup>7)</sup>.

A. Yes, but they are compāratively small, espēcially the **spare-room**; besīdes, my wife complāins of the **kitchen** being to small, of the **bedrooms** being on the third **floor**<sup>8)</sup>, and of the want of some **ättics** or **gārrets** on the top **story**<sup>8)</sup> under the roof. And as the house is let to a great many different **lōdgers**<sup>9)</sup>, one cannot **go up**

1) vgl. hierzu Lesson 1 und 2; sprich s in house = ſ. 2) Für „wohnen“ giebt es folgende Ausdrücke: a) live = leben, das allgemeinste Wort; b) dwell = verweilen, längere Zeit an einem Orte wohnen; c) reside (residieren), in einem vornehmen Hause wohnen; d) lodge = logieren, in möblierten Zimmern; e) inhābit bewohnen, also transitives Zeitwort, während die Zeitwörter von a—d intransitiv sind, also gewöhnlich eine Präposition nach sich haben. 3) „Wohnung“ ist a) dwelling or habitation = Behausung, also allgemeiner Ausdruck; b) residence = Wohnung vornehmer und adliger Familien in Schlössern (cāstles) oder vornehmen Häusern (mānsions); c) house, wenn eine bürgerliche Familie ein ganzes Haus bewohnt, was in England meist der Fall ist; d) apārtements, nicht das ganze Haus, ebenso 4) lōdgings = Logis, also namentlich möblierte Zimmer mit besonderer Rücksicht auf gute Schlafzimmer; e) chāmbers, eigentlich Kammer, meist Junggesellenwohnung, oder Bureau der Advokaten. Man kann also je nachdem sagen: to let (hire, take, engage) a house, apartments, lodgings, chambers eine Wohnung vermieten (mieten). 4) vgl. L. 51, A. 2. 5) Eigentlich „Hütte“, hier aber: kleines, hübsches, einstöckiges Haus. 6) Anspielung auf das Sprichwort: My house is my castle. 7) Gesellschaftszimmer, in welches man sich nach dem Essen „zurückzieht“. 8) floor (Flur) und story (nicht zu verwechseln mit story = Erzählung, Geschichte, vom franz. histoire), neuerdings auch storey geschrieben, Stockwerk; in neuerer Zeit hat sich dafür auch das schottische flat sehr eingebürgert. 9) Mieter einzelner Zimmer; tēnant der Mieter eines ganzen Hauses, daher auch „Pächter“.



**stairs** or **down stairs**, or even cross the **passage**, the **hall** or **lobby**<sup>1)</sup> without meeting a stranger. So, although our **landlord** and **landlady** are very pleasant persons and are not at all particular about our **paying the rent** punctually, we shall be glad to **remove** as soon as possible; I think I shall **give notice** to-day.

|                             |                            |                             |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| cōmfortable behaglich       | späre-room Gastzimmer      | die Treppe hinauf,          |
| shäre teilen                | bēdroom Schlafzimmer       | heruntergehen               |
| pärtly teilweise [Burg      | complāin(of) klagen(über), | cröss überschreiten, durch- |
| cāstle Kastell, Schloß,     | sich beklagen (über)       | schreiten [wirt             |
| pārlour } Wohnzimmer        | want (of) Mangel (an)      | ländlord Hauswirt, Gast-    |
| sitting-room } mer          | ättic Dachstube            | ländlady Hauswirtin         |
| dīne zu Mittag essen        | gārret Bodenkammer         | plēasant angenehm           |
| dīning-room Eßzimmer        | top Spitze; oberst         | partic'ūlar genau, eigen    |
| compārativē verhältniß-     | stāirs (pl.), stāircase    | rent Miete                  |
| māßig                       | (s=ß), a pair (flight)     | pūctual pünktlich           |
| späre sparsam, überflüssig, | of stairs Treppe           | remove ausziehen            |
| vorrätig                    | go up stairs, down stairs  | to give nō'tice kündigen.   |

2. *B.* It seems to me that you have dwelt<sup>2)</sup> only on the discomforts and have overlook'ed all the advantages of living in a large house (mānsion) with other persons or in lodgings. I think you ought to consider that when there is a **knock** (when somebody knocks) at the **street-door** (front-door), or when somebody **rings the bell**<sup>3)</sup>, there is a **porter** at the **gateway** to admit visitors, instead of your having to come down two or three (flights of) **stairs** to answer the knock or the bell, if you do not live on the **ground-floor**. At night, it is the porter's business<sup>4)</sup> to see that all **outer doors** are properly **locked** and **bolted** and the **shutters closed**. Then you have the use of the roomy (spacious) cellars and of the large **loft** in which to stow away any **lumber** that will not go into the big **cupboard**<sup>5)</sup> in your **antechamber**. As soon as one crosses the **threshold**, one finds one's self in an atmosphere of luxury. There is the **hall** with its painted **ceiling** and **tiled floor** and the handsome **pāper** on the walls; the **stāircase** with its low, wide steps and carved **bālustrade**<sup>6)</sup>. Then the large, clear **window-panes**, the **rōller-blinds**, that can be **drawn up** and **let down** by a mere

1) lobby Vorhaus, Vorhalle; hall, eigentlich Halle, Hausflur an der Treppe; passage dasselbe, oder kleiner Gang im Hause, Flur; corridor großer Gang in großen Gebäuden; das Wort vestibule = lobby fängt in der gewöhnlichen Sprache an, etwas zu veralten. 2) dwell in wohnen in, dwell on verweilen bei. 3) In England sind an den Thüren meist Thürklopfer; charakteristisch ist hierbei, daß der Vornehmere mehrmals klopft, wenn er Einlaß begehrt, der Niedere nur einmal (z. B. ein Dienstbote), oder zweimal (z. B. der Briefträger). 4) spr. bizness, Geschäft, Sache, Pflicht, Amt. 5) spr. cūb'burd, oder cūb'bord, Schrank, Speiseschrank, namentlich auch der eingemauerte Wandschrank. 6) Treppengeländer, familiär: bänisters.



touch of the fingers, and the rich velvet **curtains**. Surely, all this is pleasanter<sup>1)</sup> than to live in a small cottage (small house, hut).

|                          |                            |                    |        |              |                           |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------|--------|--------------|---------------------------|
| discòmfört               | Berdrießlich-              | céllar             | Keller | [boden       | händsomehandlich, hübsch, |
| feit, Unannehmlichkeit   | loft                       | Boden(raum), Ober- |        |              | schön                     |
| knock Klopfen; klopfen   | stōw (away)                | stauen, zu-        |        | pāper        | Papier, Tapete            |
| to ring the bell klingen | rücklegen, aufbewahren     |                    |        | wide         | weit, breit               |
| porter Pförtner          | lumber Gerümpel, Haus-     |                    |        | step         | Stufe                     |
| gate Thor                | rat                        |                    |        | cārvē        | schneiden [scheibe        |
| ground-floor Parterre    | ān'tēchāmer                | Vorzimmer          |        | window-pane  | Fenster-                  |
| outer äußere             | thrēsh'ōld                 | Schwelle           |        | blind        | blind; blenden            |
| lock verschließen        | ātmosphere                 | Dunstfreis,        |        | rōller-blind | Mouveau                   |
| bōlt zuriegeln           | Kreis                      | [Reichtum          |        | touch        | Berührung                 |
| shutter Fensterladen     | luxury Luxus, Uppigkeit,   |                    |        | velvet       | Sammet                    |
| close zumachen           | tile Ziegel                | [ausgelegt         |        | curtain      | Vorhang                   |
| roomy, spācious geräumig | tiled mit Ziegeln, Platten |                    |        | hut          | Hütte.                    |

3. A. Well, but I am not going to live in a **hut**. I have the plan of a most comfortable little house with **brick-walls**, (intersected) with great **cross-beams** of dark wood, the **roof** covered with red **tiles**, and a **weather-cock** and **lightning-conductor** at the **point** of the high **gable**. B. There is a great deal more trouble and worry in building a house than you are aware of; do you know, for instance, how the **drain-pipes** and the **rafters** must be laid? If you must have a house to yourself, you had much better<sup>2)</sup> rent<sup>3)</sup> one. I know the landlord of a pretty little **villa** with a **court-yard** and a nice garden adjoining it, outside the town; and I could show you over it, if you like.

A. Well, if you have the **key** to it (key of the house), we may as well go at once and look at it. But I think I shall keep to my old plan, neverthelless. I want to be a **house-owner**, not a **tenant**; and I assure you I shall invite you to be present at the ceremony of **laying** the **first stone** (the **foundation-stone**, the foundations).

|                            |              |              |               |               |                  |
|----------------------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|------------------|
| brick                      | Mauerziegel, | gāble        | Giebel        | adjōin        | angrenzen        |
| Mauerstein                 |              | a great dēal | sehr viel     | ōutside       | außerhalb, drau- |
| intersect durchschneiden   |              | wōrry        | Sorge, Unruhe | ßen           | [in              |
| (cross-)bēam (Kreuz-)      |              | awāre        | gewahr        | shōw          | ōver herumführen |
| Balken                     |              | drain        | Abzug         | neverthelless | nichtsdesto-     |
| wēather-cock Wetterhahn,   |              | drāin-pipe   | Dachrinne     | weniger       |                  |
| Wetterfahne                |              | rāfter       | Sparren       | ōwner         | Eigentümer       |
| lightning Blitz            |              | cōurt, yārd  | } Hof         | foundātion    | Grundlage,       |
| conductōr Führer, Ableiter |              | cōurt-yard   |               |               | Grund-.          |

1) Findet sich öfter statt more pleasant. 2) Sie thäten besser; vgl. L. 65, 2 d und N. 39, 5. 3) mieten und vermieten von ganzen Häusern und Landgütern.



## Forty-seventh Lesson.

## The Town. (Looking out for a House).

1. *A.* In what **quarter** (part, district) of the city<sup>1)</sup> is the house that we are going to see? *B.* It is not in the town at all, but in the **suburb**, just outside the western **gate**. When we have passed Broad Street, then a long and narrow street and the **ramparts**, and then crossed the **draw-bridge** over the **moat**, we must turn down the street to the left (right).

*A.* I think we had better go over to the other side of the **road** (to the **foot'path** on the other side) (or: let us cross the **carriage road**<sup>2)</sup>). *B.* Very well, let us do so. Now you can see the house at the **corner** of that **square**<sup>3)</sup>, opposite the **lamp** (**lamp-post**); what do you say to it?

*A.* Oh, is it that? Well, it looks a nice house, and this **square** with its **fountain** in the centre and that fine **mönument** over there, is certainly very pleasant, but still it is scarcely any more countrified than the **boarding-house**, where we are living now, and I have set my heart on getting away from the **pavements** of the town and living in a country<sup>4)</sup> lane.

|                                     |                           |                                          |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| quarter, part Viertel               | (carriage) road }         | boarding-house Pensionshaus, Fremdenhaus |
| district Bezirk                     | carriage way }            | haus, Fremdenhaus                        |
| suburb Vorstadt                     | opposite gegenüber        | to set one's heart on auf                |
| narrow eng                          | (gas)-lamp Straßenlaterne | etwas veressen sein                      |
| rampart Wall                        | lamp'-post Laternenpfahl  | get away wegkommen,                      |
| bridge Brücke                       | fountain Springbrunnen    | loskommen                                |
| draw-bridge Zugbrücke               | mönument Denkmal          | pavement Pflaster                        |
| moat Stadtgraben, Festungsgaben     | over there dort drüben    | lane Gasse, Straße mit                   |
| foot'path Fußpfad, Fußweg, Trottoir | scarcely kaum             | Einfriedigungen, Festenweg.              |
|                                     | coun'trified dem Lande    |                                          |
|                                     | ähnlich gemacht, ländlich |                                          |

2. *B.* But if you go to live so far away from the **centre** of the town and from your **counting-house**, you will have to spend part of your time at an **hotel**<sup>5)</sup> in the city. From here, within sight, as it is, of the **town-walls**, you could easily walk to and from your **place of business**<sup>6)</sup> and would not even have to go to a **coffee-house**, or an **ale-house**, or an **eating-house**<sup>7)</sup> for your refreshment

1) Über den Unterschied von town und city, vgl. Less. 22; bór'ough, eigentlich „Burg“, Burgflecken, Marktflecken, oder eine kleinere Stadt, die einen Sitz im Parlamente hat. 2) oder carriage way. 3) meist ein viereckiger, mit Gartenanlagen versehener Platz; ein runder Platz circus. 4) Gegend, Land(schaft) (in the country auf dem Lande); hier als Adjektiv „ländlich“, „ruhig“. 5) an hotel gebräuchlicher als a hotel; hotel ist ein Gasthaus 1. Ranges; inn ein solches 2. und 3. Ranges; public-house Wirtshaus, Schenke, Schanklokal, ähnlich tavern. 6) spr. bizness, place of b. Geschäftshaus. 7) auch restaurant (au = o), oder franz. Aussprache.



or **lunch**. Besides there is a **pōst-office**, a **telegrāph office**, and the **tēlephone** office just round that corner. A **policeman** goes his rounds here, the same as in the city; and in case of fire (when a house is on fire<sup>1)</sup>), there is a **fire-ēngine** with a bōdy of **fire-men** kept in the small street yonder<sup>2)</sup> to put out (extinguish) the fire. If you have such a longing for the country, why not spend your hōlidays at a country inn?

|                 |                   |             |                 |            |                  |
|-----------------|-------------------|-------------|-----------------|------------|------------------|
| cōunting-house  | Rontor            | poli'ceman  | Polizeidiener   | fire-man   | Feuerwehrmann    |
| sīght           | Sicht             | watchman    | Nachtwächter    | yōnder     | da (dort) drüben |
| āle             | Alle, helles Bier | rōund       | Runde, Rundgang | put out    | } löschen        |
| refrēshment     | Erfrischung       | ēn'gine     | Maschine        | extinguish |                  |
| lūnch(eon)      | 2. Frühstück      | fire-engine | Feuerspritze    | lōnging    | Sehnsucht.       |
| poli'ce (i = ē) | Polizei           | bōdy        | Abteilung       |            |                  |

3. A. I should not much care for that. But do you know what sort of **neigh'bours** we should have here? B. The **māyor**<sup>3)</sup> resides in that large house opposite, and several **āldermen**<sup>4)</sup> and **cōmmon cōuncilmen**<sup>5)</sup> live in the **square**; in fact all the principal **citizens** have their suburban residences in this **neigh'bourhood**.

A. Well, I will think it over. But now let us (go for a) walk through the **pārک** and round the large **pond** in it, where you will see a lot of swimming birds. Then we will go up that hill beyond the **pālāce (cāstle)**, and I will show you where I should like to build a **cōttage**. B. Very well. We can turn into the park by the **foot-path** at the side of the **hōspital**, near the **work-house** and **orphan asylum**. But mind your foot-steps, it is very steep here, you might easily tumble into that **gutter** and splash yourself all over.

|            |                  |            |                   |            |                |
|------------|------------------|------------|-------------------|------------|----------------|
| cāre for   | sich kümmern um, | wālk       | Spaziergang; spa- | orphan     | asylum (s = ß) |
| beachten   |                  | zieren     | gehen             | Waisenhaus |                |
| in fact    | in der That      | pōnd       | Teich             | step       | Schritt, Tritt |
| citizen    | Bürger           | lot        | Loß, Teil, Menge  | steep      | steil          |
| suburban   | vorstädtisch     | beyōnd     | jenseit(s)        | tumble     | fallen         |
| think over | überlegen        | pāl'āce    | Palast            | gutter     | Rinne, Gasse   |
|            |                  | wōrk-house | Armenhaus         | splash     | bespritzen.    |

4. A. There now! Is not this a lovely view of the town, with the **tōwers** and **spires** of the different churches? There are the **tōwn-hall**, the **exchānge**, the **cōrn-market** and **fish-market**. B. Yes,

1) set on fire meist „absichtlich“ in Brand stecken. 2) oder besser over there, da yon und yonder in der Umgangssprache jetzt selten gebraucht werden. 3) familiär gespr. mār; Oberbürgermeister (von London und York) Lord mayor. 4) wörtlich „alter Mann“, d. h. Stadtrat (Person), als Kollegium the corporation; the local (mūnicipāl) authorities die städtischen Behörden; māgistrate ein Beamter, Friedensrichter, Polizeirichter. 5) Stadtverordneter; für deutsche „Stadtverordnete“ könnte man auch mūnicipāl delegate sagen; für englische kommt auch noch der Name town-cōuncillor vor.



you are right; and I can even see a number<sup>1)</sup> of servants fetching water from the **pump** in the **market-place**. It is certainly very pretty.

A. And at night the many **lamps** in the streets and on the **bridge** make a scarcely less pleasing sight. Here, then, I should like to live, in a comfortable cottage with a nice garden round it and a **well** of pure water close to the door.

|                          |                           |                   |                           |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| lovely lieblich          | [über)                    | town-hall Rathaus | pump Pumpe                |
| view (of) Aussicht (auf, | exchange Börse            |                   | well (Zieh-)Brunnen       |
| tower abgeplatteter Turm | corn-market Getreidehalle |                   | pure rein, klar           |
| spire spitzer Turm       | fish-market Fischhalle    |                   | close (s=ß) to dicht bei. |
| church Kirche            | fetch holen               |                   |                           |

#### Forty-eighth Lesson.

**Firing and Lighting**<sup>2)</sup>. (Preparing for the Parents' Return).

1. A. Father and Mother are coming home to-night<sup>3)</sup>. Run and tell Mary to **light a fire** in Mother's room. She must do it directly, because that **chimney** always **smokes** when the fire is first **lit**, and we want the room to be warm and comfortable before they come.

B. And shall I ask John to bring some **wood** for this **stove**?

A. Yes, ask him to bring a large **log**, as it is such a cold night.

C. In Mother's last letter from England she says they always burn **coals** there instead of wood. A. Coals are cheaper than wood in England, because there are so many coal-mines. So they only use a little wood to **kindle** the fire with, when it is first **made**. They also have open **fire-places** in England, but these do not **heat** the rooms nearly so well as our **pipe-stoves**. C. But Mother says it is very pleasant to sit at the **fireside** and watch the fire burning on the **hearth**. A. And then in Ireland they burn square pieces of **turf** instead of either wood or coals, and these **turf-fires** are so troublesome **to light**, that they do not **put them out** at night, but only cover them with **ashes**. Then in the morning when they clear the ashes away, the turf is still smouldering.

|                     |                  |                           |                        |
|---------------------|------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|
| firing }<br>fü'el } | Feuerung         | log Klotz                 | hearth Herd, Feuerherd |
| lighting            | Beleuchtung      | cheap billig              | turf Torf              |
| light (lit, lit)    | anzünden         | kindle anfachen, anzünden | cover bedecken         |
| light }             | a fire Feuer an- | fire-place Kamin          | ashes (pl.) Asche      |
| make }              | machen, anzünden | heat hizen, erwärmen      | clear away wegräumen   |
| smoke               | rauchen          | pipe Röhre                | smoulder glimmen.      |
|                     |                  | fireside Platz am Kamin   |                        |

1) familiär: lot. 2) vgl. Lesson 1 und 2. 3) Es wird angenommen, daß die Eltern von einer Reise nach England zurückkehren.



2. *B.* Now may I take the **matches** and **light** the **gas** in the parlour? *A.* Yes, but take care you don't<sup>1)</sup> break any of the **lustres** on the **chandelier**. Just hand me that **pair of (fire-)tongs**, the **(fire-)shovel**, and the **poker**, I want to push this **billet** of wood further into the stove and to stir (poke) the fire. *C.* I am going to see if there are **(wax-)candles** in all the **candlesticks**. Shall I take up a **pair of snuffers**? *A.* No, you don't need (require) **snuffers** for the **composites**. It is only **tallow-candles** that constantly require **snuffing**. *B.* I have cleaned the **glass-bell** over the **lamp** in the hall, but there is no **oil** in it and something is wrong with the **wick**. *A.* I will ask Mary to trim it; it also wants a new **screen**. And, as it is so foggy, I think John had better put a **torch** outside the door. There, I hear the carriage! Wouldn't<sup>2)</sup> you like to take the **lantern** and run down to the gate to meet them? *B.* Yes, I will, in a moment.

|                    |                   |                     |                    |                   |                 |
|--------------------|-------------------|---------------------|--------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| match              | Streichholz       | stir, poke          | anschiüren         | clean             | reinigen        |
| lustre             | Arm am Kronen-    | wax                 | Wachs              | globe, glass-bell | Glocke          |
| leuchter           | [nenleuchter      | candle              | Kerze, Licht       | oil               | Öl              |
| chandelier (ch=sh) | Kron-             | candlestick         | Leuchter           | wick              | Docht           |
| hand               | hergeben          | snuff               | Schnuppe; auspußen | trim in Stand     | setzen, zu-     |
| tongs (pl.)        | Bange             | snuffers (pl.)      | Lichtpuße          | rechtmachen,      | schmücken       |
| shovel             | Schaufel, Schippe | compōs'ite (candle) | Stein-             | screen            | Schirm          |
| push               | stoßen            | tallow              | Talg               | foggy             | nebelig         |
| poker              | Schüreisen        | require             | erfordern          | torch             | Fackel          |
| billet             | Scheit (Holz)     |                     |                    | carriage          | Wagen, Kutsche. |

#### Forty-ninth Lesson.

#### Household Furniture. (Removing).

1. *Mrs. N.* When we **remove** to our new house, we shall want a great many new things; for after having been married for twenty years, it is no wonder if some things are broken and must be repaired, and if we have to buy some new **furniture**. *Mr. N.* Well, my dear, what we must have, should be ordered at once; so let me hear what you want new.

*Mrs. N.* Oh, we shall want a great many new things, we must **refurnish** almost the whole house. We shall want several **tables**, **chairs**, a **cupboard**<sup>3)</sup>, a **pretty cabinet**, a **wardrobe (clothes-press)**, and a **looking-glass (mirror)**. *Mr. N.* I, for my part, should like to have a new **easy-chair** with a **footstool**, a **rocking-chair**, a **writing-table** with a **book-case** on it and a **drawer** underneath it. And don't you want a new **carpet** and a **sofa** with **cushions**?

1) spr. dōn't; Abkürzung für do not, vgl. Lehrgang und Syntax, Anhang, V.

2) Abkürzung für would not, vgl. Lehrgang und Syntax, Anhang, V. 3) Vgl. S. 6, 5.



*Mrs. N.* Oh yes, to be sure, I forgēt<sup>1</sup>); but that is enough for the **sitting-room**; now for the **bedroom**. There we shall want some new **bedsteads**, a **straw-mattress**, a **bolster**, some **pillows**, and **pillow-cases**, some **blankets**<sup>2</sup>), and a **counterpane** (coverlet), besides **sheets**. *Mr. N.* Have you not forgotten a **chest of drawers**, a **dressing-table**, and a **wash-stand**?

*Mrs. N.* Yes, you are quite right, and I may add a **folding-screen** to keep off the draught, and a **cradle** for our youngest daughter's **doll**. *Mr. N.* I will see about buying you most of the things you have mentioned. But let us now go to bed, because we must get up (rise<sup>3</sup>)) early to-morrow morning (in the morning).

|                             |                             |                            |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| hou'sehöld Haushalt         | foot'stool (ü) Fußbank      | pillow Kopfkissen          |
| furniture Möbel, Mobilien   | rock schaukeln [Stuhl]      | counterpane, coverlet      |
| household furniture         | rocking-chair Schaukel-     | Decke über das ganze Bett, |
| Hausgerät                   | case (s = ß) Futteral,      | sheet Bettuch [Bettdecke]  |
| reparir ausbessern          | Schachtel, Überzug          | chest Kiste, Kasten        |
| (re)furnish (wieder)(aus)-  | book'-case Büchergestell,   | chest of drawers Kommode   |
| möblieren, anschaffen       | Bücherschrank [Kasten]      | dress ankleiden            |
| cabinet eleganter Schrank   | drawer Schublade, Tisch-    | dressing-table Toiletten-  |
| wardrobe Kleiderschrank     | underneath unter            | tisch                      |
| clothes (dh) Kleider        | carpet Teppich              | wash(ing)-stand Waschtisch |
| press Presse, Wandschrank   | cushion Kissen              | folding screen } spanische |
| looking (ü)-glass } Spiegel | bed'stead Bettstelle        | blind wall } Wand          |
| mirror (selten) }           | straw Stroh                 | draught (gh = f) Zug,      |
| easy-chair } Lehnstuhl      | mattress Matratze           | cradle Wiege [Zugluft]     |
| arm-chair }                 | bolster Polster, Quersissen | doll Puppe.                |

2. *Mrs. N.* Well, here we are at last in our new house, and very dreary it looks, with all the furniture set down just as it was brought in yesterday, and none of the smaller things unpacked! But there is some one ringing the **bell**. If that is the new **cook**, we shall soon be more comfortable. *Miss N.* It is only the boy, come to **clean the boots**; I hope we can (shall) find the **shoe-brushes**.

*Mrs. N.* I think I saw them in the **pail** (bucket) under the **kitchen-table**. *Miss N.* So they are (yes, they are there). And here are the **frying-pan**, the **tea-kettle**, and a small **sauce-pan**, but I don't see the **lid** of the kettle.

*Mrs. N.* Very likely it is in one of those **baskets**; will you unpack them, while I get the **broom** and **sweep** the hearth? *Miss N.* If I could only find a **pair of bellows**<sup>4</sup>), I could soon **blow** the fire into a fine blaze.

1) = I have forgotten it; sonst auch: I forgot. 2) In England hat man keine Federdeckbetten mehr; man schläft unter blankets (wollenen Decken). 3) get up „aufstehen“ ist gewöhnlicher als rise. 4) vgl. L. 54, 7 a. und N. 77, 1.



*Mrs. N.* Here are the **fūnnel**, **sieve**, and **spit**. Oh, and here are the **bellows**! *Miss N.* I am glad you have found them, now I shall soon be able to **roast** some **cōffee**. I should like to put this **bottle** of wine into the **decānter**<sup>1)</sup>, but I cannot find the **corkscrew**, and the **cork** is in very firm.

*Mrs. N.* Never mind<sup>2)</sup>, we shall find everything in good<sup>3)</sup> time. Here is the **coffee-mill**; when I have **ground** the coffee, we can have breakfast. Tell the servant to fetch the **jug** of milk and the little **tub** of **būtter** from the **safe**<sup>4)</sup> in the pāntry. Is the **soup** in that large **pot** ready for dinner? *Servant.* No, it must be **strained** through a **cūllender** first, and I also want to **grate** some **bread-crumbs** to put in it, when I find the **grater**.

*Mrs. N.* We must **dust** the table before we set the breakfast. Have you seen the **dūster**? *Servant.* Yes, that and the **feather-broom** were in the pail together with the shoe-brushes.

|                            |                          |                            |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| drēary öde                 | sauce-pan Saucepfanne    | grīnd (grōund, grōund)     |
| yēsterday gestern          | lid Deckel               | māhlen, zermāhlen          |
| unpāck aūspacken           | bāsket Korb              | brēakfast erstes Frühstück |
| sōme one jemand            | broom Besen              | jug, pīcher Krug           |
| cook (ū) Koch, Köchin      | sweep fegen              | tub Tonne, Faß             |
| boy Bursche, Laufbursche   | heārth Herd              | pāntry Speisekammer        |
| clēan reinigen, putzen,    | bēllōws (pl.) Blasebalg  | soup Suppe                 |
| wichsen                    | blōw blasen, ansachen    | pot Topf                   |
| boot Stiefel               | blaze Flamme, Glut       | strain durchsiehen         |
| shoe Schuh                 | fūnnel Trichter          | cūllender } Durchschlag    |
| brush Bürste; bürsten      | sieve Sieb               | cōlander }                 |
| pail } Eimer <sup>5)</sup> | spit Bratspieß           | grate reiben               |
| būcket }                   | rōast rösten, braten     | grāter Reibeisen           |
| fry (in der Pfanne) bra-   | bottle Flasche           | crumb Krume                |
| ten, schmoren              | cork Pfropfen            | dust Staub; abstäuben      |
| pan Pfanne                 | screw Schraube           | dūster Abwisch Tuch        |
| kettle Kessel              | corkscrew Pfropfenzieher | feather-broom Feder-       |
| sauce Sauce, Brühe         | mill Mühle               | wisch.                     |

3. *Mrs. N.* Tell the boy to **beat** the **door-mat** and lay it down, and to put the **scraper** outside the door, so that visitors can scrape their shoes and wipe their feet. Now, come to breakfast. *Miss N.* I am so cōvered with **dust**, that I should almost like to **take** a **bath**.

*Mrs. N.* I forgōt you would want to **wash yourself**; here is a **bāsin** and some **soap**; you can draw some **warm water** from the

1) Wasserflasche, Karaffe, eine Flasche, in welcher der Wein in England gewöhnlich auf den Tisch kommt. 2) statt never mind it beachte es (nie) nicht, es thut nichts. 3) zur rechten (Z.). 4) der „sichere“ Verwahrungsort, daher auch „Geldschrank“ und wie hier „Speiseschrank“. 5) pail bezeichnet ein feineres Gefäß, bucket ein größeres und gröberes; daher bucket auch „Feuereimer“, „Schiffseimer“.



boiler tap; and here is a towel to wipe yourself on. Miss N. I could not brush my hair this morning, for my brush and comb were nowhere to be seen.

Mrs. N. They were in the drawer of the wash-stand together with your tooth-brush and tooth-powder. There is some one knocking at the door! Come in! Oh, it is the cook at last! I am very glad she has come, now I can put the rest of the house in order, while she attends to everything in the kitchen and prepares dinner.

|          |                      |        |                   |             |               |
|----------|----------------------|--------|-------------------|-------------|---------------|
| bēat     | schlagen, ausklopfen | wash   | waschen           | comb        | Kamm          |
| mat      | (Matte, Strohm)      | bāsin  | (s=ß) Waschbecken | nō'where    | nirgendś      |
| door-mat | matte                | soap   | Seife             | tooth       | Bahn          |
| scrape   | abfragen             | boil   | kochen            | [apparat    | powder Pulver |
| scrāper  | Abstreicheisen       | boiler | Kochkessel, Koch- | come in!    | herein!       |
| wipe     | (ab)wischen, putzen  | tap    | Hahn, Zapfen      | attend (to) | besorgen      |
| bāth     | Bad                  | towel  | Handtuch          | dinner      | Mittageffen.  |
| bāthe    | (dh) baden           |        |                   |             |               |

#### Fiftieth Lesson.

#### The Meals. (Preparation).

1. John. I am very hungry and thirsty, Mammā; I have not yet eaten anything. If we are not going to have breakfast (dinner, supper) soon, I should like a slice of bread and butter or a sandwich<sup>1)</sup>; my appetite is very great, I am dreadfully hungry. Mother. We shall not dine until late to-day, but I will give you a cup of broth<sup>2)</sup> in the meantime, that will quench your thirst and be a nourishing food<sup>3)</sup> at the same time.

J. Thank you<sup>4)</sup>, this is very nice. I suppose, as our friends are coming to dinner, you have prepared several kinds of meat. M. Yes, we shall have (dine on<sup>5)</sup>) roast mutton, boiled beef, and a small piece of pork.

J. Are you going to have any soup<sup>6)</sup>? M. Of course; and some fried-fish. And Mr. N. sent us a present of<sup>7)</sup> a nice joint<sup>8)</sup> of venison, so I shall have that for dinner instead of the roast hare I meant to get.

J. And for vegetables you will have greens<sup>9)</sup> and potatoes,

1) mit Schinken belegtes Butterbrot; so benannt nach dem Grafen Sandwich (1718—1792), der sich vom Kellner diese Nahrung bringen ließ, um nicht vom Spieltische aufstehen zu müssen. 2) Fleischbrühe; sauce künstliche Sauce; gravy natürliche Bratenbrühe. 3) nicht zu verwechseln mit foot (ü) Fuß. 4) = please, if you please bezeichnet die Annahme des Angebotenen, deutsch: bitte, oder: wenn ich bitten darf; no, thank you ist ablehnend, deutsch: ich danke! 5) vgl. L. 70, F 5. und N. 157, 5. 6) Als Vorspeise giebt es in England meist keine Suppe. 7) = sent us as a present. 8) eigentlich „Gelenk“, dann jedes größere Fleischstück, in dem sich ein größerer Knochen befindet, und das zum Essen bestimmt ist. 9) Die englischen Gemüse kommen ungesalzen und ohne Fett auf den Tisch.



I suppose. And what kind of **pudding**? *M.* I thought of making a sweet **omelet** besides milk and fruit puddings.

*J.* And what are we to have for **supper**? *M.* There are a pair of cold **fowls**, a **veal** cutlet, different kinds of **sausages**<sup>1)</sup>, as Brünswick<sup>2)</sup> sausage, and black-pudding. And I have baked a **cake**, a **loaf**<sup>3)</sup> of **white bread**, some **rolls** and also a quantity (lot) of **biscuits** and **rusks**<sup>4)</sup>, so that we need not offer our guests any of the **stale brown household bread**, but new white bread.

|                            |                                         |                           |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| mēal Mahlzeit              | cup Tasse                               | roast hare Hasenbraten    |
| hunger (spr. g-g) Hunger   | broth Fleischbrühe                      | potāto Kartoffel          |
| thirst Durst               | mēantime Zwischenzeit                   | pudding Mehlspeise        |
| hungry (spr. g-g) hungrig  | quench stillen, löschen                 | ōmelet Eierfuchen         |
| thirsty durstig            | nourish } (er)nähren                    | milk Milch                |
| I have not yet ēaten       | feed }                                  | fowl Geflügel, Huhn       |
| anything ich bin noch      | food Nahrung                            | cutlet Kotelett, Rippchen |
| nüchtern [stücken          | mēat Fleisch (zum Essen                 | sau'sage (spr. sösidzh)   |
| breakfast Frühstück; früh- | bestimmt)                               | Wurst, Bratwurst          |
| lunch } 2. Frühstück,      | meats Fleischspeisen                    | Brünswick sausage Cer-    |
| luncheon } Gabelfrühstück  | roast rosten, braten                    | velatwurst                |
| dinner Mittagessen         | roast meat Braten                       | black-pudding Rotwurst,   |
| dine } zu Mittag           | mutton <sup>5)</sup> Schöpsenfleisch,   | bake backen [Blutwurst    |
| to have dinner } essen     | Hammelfleisch                           | roll Semmel               |
| supper Abendessen          | boil kochen, sieden                     | guest Gast                |
| sup } zu Abend             | beef <sup>5)</sup> Rindfleisch [fleisch | stale altbacken, hart     |
| to have supper } essen     | corned beef Pökelrind-                  | new frisch                |
| slice Schnitt, Scheibe     | pork <sup>5)</sup> Schweinefleisch      | household bread haus-     |
| bread and butter Butter-   | veal <sup>5)</sup> Kalbfleisch          | backen Brot               |
| brot [Butterbemme          | fry backen                              | brown bread Schwarz-      |
| slice of bread and butter  | venison Wildpret                        | brot; Graham-Brot.        |

*J.* Then they will also **breakfast** and **lunch** with us to-morrow.

*M.* For **breakfast** we shall have **bacon**, and **eggs**, cooked in all kinds of ways: **boiled**, and **bēaten**<sup>6)</sup> and **poached**<sup>7)</sup>. And for **luncheon**, before our visitors go, we will have some **salt meat** and **ham**, and most likely there will be some **fowl** left over from to-night's<sup>8)</sup> supper.

1) In England kennt man die verschiedenen Wurstspeisen sehr wenig; man hat dafür eine Art Sülzwurst oder Schwartenwurst, brawn genannt. Außerdem giebt es noch ein pork-pie, das in einer Teigkruste eingefaßt ist (pie Pastete). 2) d. h. braunschweiger. 3) Beachte bread das Brot, a loaf of bread (ein Laib Brot) ein Brot. 4) biscuit harter oder feiner, rusk weicher und süßer Zwieback. 5) verwandt mit französischem mouton, boeuf, porc, veau. Beachte, daß die Tiere germanische Namen (vgl. Lesson 30), die Fleischsorten aber romanische Namen haben; warum wohl? 6) bēaten eggs Rühreier, eigentlich „geschlagene“ Eier, dafür auch scrambled oder buttered eggs. 7) to poach eggs Eier ausschlagen und weich kochen; poached eggs Spiegeleier, Seheier. 8) to-night heute abend; im gewöhnlichen Leben bezeichnet man die Zeit bis 10 Uhr mit evening, die spätere mit night.



*J.* It seems to me you have prepared victuals<sup>1)</sup> enough to **feed** a small army instead of only about half a dozen friends. Of eggs alone you must have used several dozen; how many did you put in the cake? *M.* The **yolks**<sup>2)</sup> of 12 eggs. The **whites**<sup>2)</sup> I use afterwards for the icing. One needs (to) lay in a good supply of provisions when one has 10 or 12 guests to four meals; you will see, by<sup>3)</sup> tomorrow evening, there will not be very much left of anything.

|                             |                            |                |                               |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------|-------------------------------|
| bācon Speck                 | salt meat                  | Speckfleisch   | lay in anlegen, sich versehen |
| ham Schinken                | dozen Duzend               | [überziehen]   | supply Vorrat [mit            |
| cook (ü) kochen, zubereiten | ice Eis; mit Eis bedecken, | evening Abend. |                               |

### Fifty-first Lesson.

#### Dinner-Things<sup>4)</sup>. (Laying the Table).

*Mistress.* Come, Märy, it is time to **lay the cloth**. All the best **dinner-things** are on the side-table<sup>5)</sup>. *Servant.* Will you please give me the **table-cloth**?

*M.* You will find all the **table-linen**, the large cloth and two dozen (of) **table-napkins**, in the linen-press. *S.* How many persons shall I **set the table** for?

*M.* You had better lay fifteen **knives** and **forks** and **spoons**, though I do not suppose there will be quite so many as that to sit down to dinner. *S.* Oh, I have **cut** my hand with this **knife**!

*M.* Why, you have got the knives all in confusion in the box! You should lay them all one way, so that you take hold of the **handles** only, never of the **blades**. *S.* I thought I was touching the **back** of the knife, but I suppose it must have been the **edge**.

*M.* Put them all on the **waiter** (tray), together with the **crūet-stand** and **salt-cellars**, and carry them into the dining-room. You can also put the **nūterackers** and the **sugar-basin** in the middle of the table, they will be wanted for **dessert**<sup>6)</sup>.

|                             |                      |                |                             |                             |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|----------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| mīstress Herrin,            | Haus-                | (table-)näpkin | Serviette                   | cut schneiden, schnitt, ge- |
| cloth Tuch                  | [frau                | linen-press    | Wäschschrank                | schnitten [Unordnung        |
| to lay the table(cloth) den | to set the table den | Tisch          | confusion Verwirrung,       |                             |
| Tisch decken                | vorrichten           |                | hold Halt; halten           |                             |
| clear abräumen              | knife Messer         |                | take hold of anfassen       |                             |
| linen Leinwand              | fork Gabel           |                | handle Henkel, Griff, Stiel |                             |
| table-linen Tischzeug       | spoon Löffel         |                | blade Klinge                |                             |

1) spr. vīt'lz, Lebensmittel; in der feineren Gesellschaft sagt man jetzt dafür meist provisions. 2) spr. yōlk, Eigelb, Dotter; von yellow gelb, vgl. Lesson 31, 3. Das Gegenteil: white Eiweiß. 3) um, gegen. 4) Tischgerät, dafür auch table-ūtēn'sils. 5) eigentlich Seitentisch, dann Nebentisch, Schenktisch, Nachttisch, Serviertisch; ebenso sideboard. 6) spr. dezzert, Nachttisch; nicht zu verwechseln mit desert Verdienst und desert Wüste.



|                              |              |               |                |           |
|------------------------------|--------------|---------------|----------------|-----------|
| edge Rand, Schneide          | crū'et-stand | Öl- und Eßig- | nüteracker     | Mußnacker |
| wāiter 1) Kellner, 2) Prä-   | ständer      |               | sugar (s = sh) | Zucker    |
| sentierteiler = tray         | salt-cellar  | Salznäpfchen  | bāsin (s = ß)  | Dose.     |
| crū'et Öl- u. Eßigfläschchen | carry        | tragen        |                |           |

2. S. Shall I take in the rūby glass **water-jug** and the **göblets** to match? M. Yes, and set a **wine-glass** to every place. And now put the **chīna cups** and **saucers** and the silver **tēa-spoons** and the **cōffee-pot** on the **tea-tray**, so that they may be ready to bring<sup>1)</sup> in when I call for them after dinner.

S. If you please<sup>2)</sup>, Ma'am<sup>3)</sup>, I have brōken the handle off this **milk-jug**. M. That is through rattling the pieces of **crōckery** one against the other; you must be more cāreful in future. Now, when you **serve up** the dinner, bring in the **soup-turēen** first; and be quite sure<sup>4)</sup> that the **plates** and **dishes** and the **sauce-boats** are all thōroughly hot. And do not forget to put a cōver over each joint of meat.

|                           |                              |                           |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| rūby Rubin; rot           | cup Obertasse                | plate Teller              |
| jug Krug                  | saucer Untertasse            | dish (eigentlich Tisch)   |
| göblet Becher, Pokal      | rattlerasseln, (zusammen)-   | Schüssel, Gericht         |
| match (wozu) passen, ent- | cāreful sorgfältig [flappern | sauce-boat Saucennapf     |
| chīna Porzellan [sprechen | serve up auftragen           | thō'rōugh gänzlich, voll- |
| crōckery Steingut         | turēen' Terrine, Schüssel    | ständig.                  |

### Fifty-second Lesson.

#### A Dinner Party at Table.

A. Do you find the soup sufficiently **sēasoned**, or will you take a little more **salt** and **pēpper**? Here is the **pepper-box**. B. No, thank you, it is very nice indeed; with what **spice** is it flavoured? A. Only with **nūtmeg** and a few **cloves**. C. I think I will **pepper** my soup a little more, if you will be so good as to pass me the **pepper-box**. A. Now, Mrs. B., may I cut you a slice of this leg of mutton? B. Yes, if you please. A. Do you like it well done<sup>5)</sup> (ōverdone, or ūnderdone)? B. I like it well done. A. Or perhāps you would prefer some of these side-dishes, some veal, or some kīdney-pie? B. I will take a **veal-cutlet**, please. A. Do you take **mūstard**? Will you please hand Mrs. B. the **mustard-pot**. D. May I **pour** you

1) statt to be brought in. 2) „bitte“; Anrede eines Untergebenen an einen Vorgesetzten, besonders eines Dieners oder einer Magd an ihre Herrschaft. 3) spr. mām, Abkürzung von Mādam. 4) = sei Deiner Sache ganz sicher. 5) well done gut gekocht (gebraten), gar, weich; ōverdone übergar, stark gebraten; ūnderdone nicht ganz durchgekocht oder gebraten. Die Hauptkunst für die englische Küche (English cooking) besteht nun darin, das Fleisch so zu braten, daß ein Teil well done (overdone), der andere noch underdone ist, so daß beim Aufschneiden noch etwas Blut mit herausläuft.



**out** a glass of **white wine** or **claret**<sup>1)</sup>? *B.* No, thank you, I think I would rather **drink** some (have a glass of) cold **water**. *A.* Here is some **lemonade**, if you would prefer it. *B.* Ah, that is my **favourite** drink. *C.* This **stewed meat** is delicious. *D.* Will you not have a **dumpling** with it? *C.* Ah! That is the very thing I wanted. I like this better than any **roast meat**, except perhaps **roast goose**; I think a nicely **roasted goose** is a dish fit for a king.

pârtý Gesellschaft

season würzen

season with salt salzen

pepper Pfeffer; pfeffern

spice Gewürze

flavour würzen, lieblichen

Geschmack geben

nutmeg Muskatnuß

clove Gewürznelke

pass hergeben, hingeben

leg of mutton Schöpfen-

feule, Hammelfeule

side-dish Nebengericht

mustard Senf [chen

hand einhändigen, überrei-

pour out einschenken

lemonade Limonade

favourite Lieblings-

drink Getränk

beverage (angenehmes)

stew schmoren [Getränk

delicious köstlich

dumpling Kloß

fit passend, geeignet.

2. *A.* Can I offer you some **salad**? Or, pray, help yourself. *B.* I will take a little of this **cress**. *A.* Shall I pass you the **oil** and **vinegar**? *B.* If you please. *A.* Now will you have a piece of **tart**? Here is a **jam** and an **apple tart**; or would you like some of this **cherry-pie**? *B.* I think I should prefer a little milk-pudding with **preserves**<sup>2)</sup>. *A.* Certainly; this one is flavoured with **cinnamon** and that with **ginger**; which will you have? *D.* And you must take some **sherry**, **port**, **Champagne**, or a little **Burgundy**, or **Hock**<sup>3)</sup>. *A.* Mr. C., won't you taste that **Cheshire**<sup>4)</sup> or **Stilton**<sup>5)</sup> **cheese**? *C.* No, thank you, I think I will have some **sweetmeats** now; I should like some **sugar-candy** and a piece of **ginger-bread**, and those little **cakes of chocolate**, which look very tempting. *D.* Will you take<sup>6)</sup> a glass of **brandy**<sup>7)</sup> and **water** before we leave the table? Or, here is some **rum**, you might mix some **punch**. *C.* No, thank you, I would rather not **drink** any **spirits** just now. *A.* Will you take<sup>6)</sup> a cup of **coffee** or **chocolate** or **tea**? *C.* If you please, I should like some **coffee** with **cream**. *B.* I should be glad of a cup of tea, if it is made of **black tea** only, but I never drink **green tea**, it gives me **headache**<sup>8)</sup>. *A.* This is **black tea**; will you have

1) Rotwein, Bordeauxwein; eigentlich Wein von „heller“ Färbung. 2) In Zucker eingemachte Früchte, Kompott; pickles in Essig eingemachtes; mixed pickles allerlei in Essig eingemachtes Gemüse. 3) Abkürzung für „Hochheimer“, dann der gebräuchliche Name für alle Rheinweine (Rhénish wines). 4) Vgl. Lesson 22. 5) Dorf in Huntingdonshire, berühmt wegen seines Käses. 6) trinken; vgl. französisch: prendre une tasse de café, de chocolat, de thé. 7) Branntwein d. h. Cognak; im allgemeinen ist „Branntwein“ mit spirits zu übersetzen, wovon die gewöhnlichsten Arten gin (Wachholderbranntwein) und whiskey (Kornbranntwein) sind, die aber meist stark mit Wasser verdünnt und auch vielfach von englischen Frauen getrunken werden. 8) the headache wird in diesem Falle vielfach von weniger gebildeten Leuten gebraucht.



**milk or cream?** *B.* Milk, please, and I have not sugared it quite enough, it is very strong tea. *D.* Will you not eat some of these **cräcknels** or **wāfers** with it? *B.* No, thank you, I should like a glass of **beer** now, either ale, or porter, or stout, while you smoke a mild (strong) **cigâr**.

|                            |                             |                          |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| prāy bitte                 | gingerbread Pfefferkuchen   | crēam Sahne              |
| help helfen                | sherry Xereßwein            | hēadache Kopfschmerz(en) |
| help yourself bedienen Sie | port Portwein               | sūgar (s = sh) Zucker an |
| sich selbst, langen Sie zu | Champagne (ch = sh)         | etwas thun               |
| vinegar Essig              | Champagner                  | cräcknel Brezel          |
| târt Torte, Obstkuchen     | Burgundy Burgunder          | wāfer Waffel             |
| jam Dicksaft gesottener    | swēet'mēats Zuckerwerk      | ale helles Bier          |
| Früchte, Mus, Marmelade    | sūgar (s = sh) cāndy        | porter } dunkles Bier    |
| cinnamon Zimmet [lade      | Randißzucker                | stout }                  |
| ginger Ingwer              | spirit(s) geistige Getränke | mild mild, leicht.       |

### Fifty-third Lesson.

#### A Gentleman's Dress<sup>1)</sup>. (Preparing for a Journey).

*A.* I have not (haven't) half finished my packing; I shall never be able to get all my **clothes** into my portmanteau<sup>2)</sup> in time<sup>3)</sup> to catch the train. I did not know it was so late until I heard the clock strike 12 just now, for my **watch**<sup>4)</sup> is half an hour **too slow**<sup>5)</sup>. *B.* Does your watch lose so much as that? I remember you **set it** on Sunday by the **sun-dial** in the churchyard. It generally **gains**, does it not<sup>6)</sup>?

*A.* Yes, and it was 10 minutes **too fast** when I wound it up last night. I think it must have **stopped** altogether for a time. It is very tiresome, for I am afraid not knowing the time has lost me my train<sup>7)</sup>. *B.* Oh, I think you will have time. Let me see if I cannot pack your trunk quicker (more quickly) than you can. Do you know what you have already put in?

*A.* I have put in the linen **shirts** and my best **coat**, the black **waistcoat**, two **pairs of trousers**<sup>8)</sup>, and my **dressing-gown**. Here

1) Dress Kleidung, Anzug, das allgemeine Wort; dafür auch clōthing (dh); clōthes (dh) die einzelnen Kleidungsstücke, eigentlich Plural von clōth Tuch, cloths Tücher, Tuchsorten. Andere Ausdrücke für Kleidung sind noch: suit of clothes ein vollständiger Anzug; appārel und attire (kostbare Kl.); gārment und hābit (Gewand); vēstment (Amtstracht); to dress (sich) (an)kleiden, undress (sich) auskleiden. 2) portmānteau (eau = o), eigentlich Mantelsack, lederner Reisekoffer; ein Reisekoffer von Holz, aber mit Leder überzogen ist trunk. 3) zur rechten Zeit. 4) clock Turm- und Stubenuhr, watch Taschenuhr. 5) is too slow geht nach; is too fast geht vor; loses geht langsam, gains läuft vor. 6) nicht wahr? vgl. L. 63, A. 4. und N. 11, Ann. 7) = by not knowing the time I have lost my train. 8) lange Hosen, dafür in Amerika pantaloons; knickerbockers Kniehosen, dafür auch breeches (ee = i).



is my **dress-coat**<sup>1)</sup>, you must be very careful not to crumple that. *B.* That will be all right. Now give me the **collars** and **händkerchiefs**, and your two new **cravats**; your **kid gloves** also had better go in the trunk, as you will want to wear<sup>2)</sup> your warm **woollen gloves**. On the bed are a dozen **pair(s) of socks** and your flannel **undershirts**, please hand them to me. Will you **put on**<sup>3)</sup> this **great-coat**?

*A.* No, I shall wear my **fur-lined over-coat**; the other one is too shabby; it has not worn well; the **sleeves** are almost worn through at the elbows, the **collar** and **lappets** are very greasy and there are several holes in the **lining**; and, worst of all<sup>4)</sup>, the **button-holes** are so worn out, that they come **unbuttoned** as fast as I **button** them.

|                               |                           |                             |              |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------|
| journey Reise                 | waistcoat (spr. wäscut)   | great-coat                  | } Überzieher |
| strike schlagen               | Weste                     | top-coat                    |              |
| set (eine Uhr) stellen        | drëssing-gown Schlafrock  | over-coat                   |              |
| wind up aufziehen             | crumple zerfnittern, zer- | fur Pelz                    |              |
| dī'al Zifferblatt             | collar Kragen [fnüllen    | line füttern (mit Tuch      |              |
| sūn-dī'al Sonnenuhr           | pocket Tasche             | u. f. w.)                   |              |
| churchyard Kirchhof           | pocket-händkerchief       | lining Futter               |              |
| altogeth'er ganz und gar      | Taschentuch               | shabby schäbig              |              |
| tī'reesome langweilig, ver-   | cravat oder cravat Hals-  | el'bōw Ellbogen             |              |
| drießlich                     | binde                     | läppet Zipfel               |              |
| to be afräid fürchten         | glōve Handschuh           | greasy schmierig, schmutzig |              |
| put in hineinstecken, hinein- | kid glove Glacéhandschuh  | bütton Knopf; zu knöpfen    |              |
| linen Leinwand [thun          | woollen (ü) wollen(er)    | unbütton aufknöpfen,        |              |
| shirt (Herren-) Hemd          | dōzen Duzend              | aufgehen.                   |              |

2. *B.* Well, the portmanteau is nearly full; what else is there to be put in? *A.* This **pair of braces** and my **hat**, if you have room for it; I should like to wear my **cap** for the journey.

*B.* There is not (isn't) room to pack the hat safely, it might get crushed; you had better wear it and put the cap in your **pocket**; then in the railway carriage you can **take off your hat** and **put on the cap**. *A.* That is a great deal of trouble, but I suppose it cannot be helped<sup>5)</sup>. Here is my box of **cigārs**. Wait a minute<sup>6)</sup>, let me take a few out to fill my **cigar-case**, I shall want to smoke on the journey. I should think my **pipe** would be quite safe in this box; I shall not take any **tobācco** with me, as I can buy that quite as good anywhere; but I will take my **snuff-box** (with me).

1) Frack, der übrigens in England nur am Abend getragen wird, nicht am Tage, selbst nicht bei den feierlichsten Gelegenheiten, z. B. bei einer Trauung. 2) „tragen“, von Kleidungsstücken; bear „tragen“ von Waffen und Leiden und Früchten; carry „tragen“, von schweren Lasten, take von leichten. 3) put on anziehen, oder aufsetzen, z. B. a hat; take off, pull off ausziehen. 4) und was das Schlimmste ist. 5) das läßt sich nicht ändern. 6) spr. minut; nicht zu verwechseln mit minute klein, unbedeutend.



*B.* Give me your **house-jacket** and **slippers**, I have a little corner here where they will just fit in. *A.* Why, we have forgotten the **boots** and **shoes**; you will never find room for them now.

*B.* Oh, yes, I shall manage it. But you don't want **two pair(s) of shoes** besides the **boots**, you had better leave the old pair of **pātent<sup>1)</sup> leather shoes** at home; and I will send them to be **re-soled** (I will have them re-soled) while you are away. *A.* Very well, but is there room for the **boot-jack**? for I don't know how I should get these boots off without it.

*B.* There, everything is in the box now; if you will lock it, it will be ready to take downstairs. Are you sure you have everything you want in your pockets, your **purse**, **pocket-book**, and so on?

*A.* Yes, I have them all safe, and here is my **note-book**. Oh, I had nearly forgotten my **spēctacles<sup>2)</sup>**, where are they?

*B.* Here they are on the dressing-table and here is your **silk neckerchief**. *A.* I have not so very much to carry, I think I will take my **pōcket-tēlescope** with me.

*B.* While you put your **travelling-rug**, **umbrella**, and **walking-stick** all together in a strap, I will go and get some lunch ready for you, there is quite a quarter of an hour to spare<sup>3)</sup> before you need start.

|                  |                 |              |                 |                |                     |
|------------------|-----------------|--------------|-----------------|----------------|---------------------|
| brāces (pl.)     | Tragbänder,     | snuff        | Schnupftabak    | purse          | Börse, Portemonnaie |
| hat              | Hut             | [Hosenträger | take snuff      | pōcket-book    | Brieftasche         |
| cap              | Mütze           |              | jācket          | nōte-book      | Notizbuch           |
| crush            | zusammenpressen |              | slipper         | nēck'erchief   | Halstuch            |
| rāilway          | Eisenbahn       |              | boot            | tēlescope      | Fernrohr            |
| cārriage         | Wagen           |              | shoe            | travelling-rug | Reisedecke          |
| cigār-case (s=ß) | Cigar-          | mānage       | fertig bringen  | umbrella       | Regenschirm         |
| rentasche        |                 | sole         | Sohle; besohlen | walking-stick  | Spazierstock        |
| smoke            | rauchen         | re-sōle      | wiederbesohlen  | strap          | Riemen              |
| tobācco          | Tabak           | boot-jack    | Stiefelfnecht   | start          | aufbrechen.         |

#### Fifty-fourth Lesson.

#### A Lady's Dress. (A Shopping Expedition<sup>4)</sup>).

1. *A.* I am going to town to do some shopping, would you like to come with me? *B.* Yes, very much; it won't take me many minutes to change my **dress** and get my **bonnet<sup>5)</sup>** and **gloves**.

*A.* You had better take your **shawl** with you, for it may be evening before we get back. And, as you are upstairs, look and

1) oder patent patentiert, bevorrechtet; patent shoes oder bloß patents Lackstiefel.  
 2) meine Brille; eine Brille a pair of spectacles. 3) übrig; eigentlich sparen, schonen.  
 4) vgl. hierzu auch Lesson 39. 5) bonnet Damenhut, hat Herrenhut, oder Damenhut mit breiter Krämpe.



see if you can find my **veil**; it was not in my bonnet-box, so I came down without it. *B.* Here it is; and I am quite ready. Shall I **open your parasol**<sup>1)</sup> for you?

*A.* I shall not take it, for I should only have to **put it down** when we get into the crowded streets. *B.* What are you going to buy?

*A.* I want a new **black silk gown**, a warm **petticoat** and a **pair of boots**. And I think I shall buy (myself) a **black straw-bonnet**, if I see a pretty one. *B.* I want some **hair-pins** and some large **hooks and eyes**, for I should like to alter my winter **cloak**, so that it can be **hooked** all down the front.

*A.* If I were to buy you some wool, would you like to knit yourself a couple of **pairs of stockings** for the winter? *B.* Yes, I think I should. But what else are you going to buy?

*A.* Some **calico** for **chemises**<sup>2)</sup> and to make some **shirts** for your father; some pretty **print**, which you shall choose, to make into **aprons**<sup>3)</sup> for you and your sister; and some wide **lace** to put round the necks of your velvet **dresses**. *B.* And then you will want some **ribbon**<sup>4)</sup> to trim your bonnet with, and my sister wants a new **bow** for her **hat**; she got it spoiled by the rain the other day.

|            |                  |           |                     |        |                      |
|------------|------------------|-----------|---------------------|--------|----------------------|
| shop       | Laden; Kaufläden | petticoat | Unterrock           | print  | (bedruckter, bunter) |
| besuchen   |                  | hook      | (ü) Hafen; zuhaken  | lace   | Spitze [Kattun       |
| expedition | Zug, Ausgang     | eye       | Öse                 | velvet | Sammet               |
| veil       | (ā) Schleier     | cloak     | langer Mantel (ohne | trim   | schmücken            |
| dress      | } Kleid          | Ärmel)    | [Baumwolle          | bow    | Schleife             |
| gown       |                  | calico    | (weißer) Kattun,    | spoil  | verderben.           |

2. *A.* I am also going to see if I can buy a **mangle** and a large basket for the **dirty linen**<sup>5)</sup>. I have decided to have the **washing** done at home in future instead of sending it to the **laundry**. The **laundress** is so careless with the **linen**, she has torn some of the things all to pieces by **wringing** them too hard. We can have a woman on Mondays to **wash** the clothes, and when she has **rinsed** them, they can be put through the mangle instead of being **wrung**; and then the servant can hang the **clean linen** out to dry and afterwards **fold** and **damp** it. I suppose at first we shall have to get an **ironing-woman** for a few hours, but by-and-bye,

1) spr. s=ß; Sonnenschirm, nicht zu verwechseln mit umbrëlla, obwohl dieses letztere Wort dasselbe ist wie das franz. ombrelle; einen Sonnenschirm (Regenschirm) aufspannen heißt open a par., zumachen put down. 2) chemise (franz. Aussprache) Frauenhemd, shirt Herrenhemd. 3) Schürze, spr. āpurn, besser āprun. 4) Band zum Binden an Hüften, tape einfaches weißes Band zum Anbinden irgend eines Gegenstandes. 5) linen, eigentlich Leinwand, dann die „Wäsche“ d. h. die Sachen, die gewaschen werden sollen; washing die „Wäsche“ d. h. das Waschen.



you girls might learn to do the **starching** and **ironing**. *B.* I should like to try very much, but I don't think I could **iron** the **fronts** of father's shirts well enough.

*A.* You could after a little practice. I must also buy a couple of **box-irons**, an **ironing-board**, and some **pegs**. *B.* Oh, do come and look at the **fur tippet** and **muff** in this shop-window. Are they not pretty?

*A.* They are very pretty; I suppose you would like to have them. *B.* I should very much, but I am afraid they are very expensive.

*A.* Well, we will see when Christmas comes. What do you think your sister would like for a Christmas present? I thought of buying her a **brooch** or a **fan**. *B.* She has one brooch already. Don't you think she would like a **pair of ear-rings** or a **bracelet** better?

*A.* Ear-rings have quite gone out of fashion; but if you like, we will go now and choose a pretty bracelet. And then we must make haste and do the rest of our shopping so as to get home in time for tea.

|                                         |                              |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| mangle Mangel, Mandel, fôld falten      | Christmas (Christmesse)      |
| Stolle; mandeln, rollen damp anfeuchten | Weihnachten                  |
| basket Korb                             | iron (spr. i-urn) plätten    |
| dirty schmutzig                         | by-and-bye nach und nach     |
| laundry Waschanstalt                    | stârch stärken               |
| laundress Wäscherin                     | box-iron Plätteisen          |
| wring ausringen                         | peg Hammer                   |
| rinse spülen                            | fur tippet Pelzfragen        |
| dry trocknen                            | expensive kostspielig, teuer |
|                                         | brooch Brosche, Tuchnadel    |
|                                         | fan Fächer                   |
|                                         | ear-ring Ohrring             |
|                                         | bracelet Armband             |
|                                         | fashion Mode                 |
|                                         | haste Hast                   |
|                                         | make haste eilen.            |

### Fifty-fifth Lesson.

#### Diseases<sup>1)</sup>.

*A.* Do you think that London is a **healthy** place to live in? *B.* Considering the number of its inhabitants, it is very healthy; the **death-rate** there is lower than in most large towns.

*A.* But I suppose you sometimes have **epidemics** of **contagious diseases**? *B.* No very serious ones of late years<sup>2)</sup>. There are now and then a good many cases of **measles** in some of the poorer streets and a few instances of **týphus** and **scârlet fêver**<sup>3)</sup>. The **treatment** of this last **illness** has so improved lately, that comparatively few persons **die** of it now. And as many precautions are taken to prevent the **infection** from being carried, it seldom spreads very far.

1) disease der technische Ausdruck für „Krankheit“ und für organische Erkrankungen z. B. der Lungen; illness der allgemeine und familiäre Ausdruck; sickness für Krankheiten, Übelkeiten von kurzer Dauer, z. B. sea-sickness Seefrankheit, ebenso die Adjektive ill und sick. 2) in den letzten Jahren; late hier = not long past. 3) Scharlach(fieber); scarlati'na (i = e) leichtes Scharlach.



A. And how about **small-pox**? B. Since **vaccination** has been made compulsory, small-pox has become quite rare; and if people could be persuaded to be **vaccinated** regularly every ten years, I believe it would soon disappear altogether; but revaccination is not compulsory in England.

|                         |                           |                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| hēalth Gesundheit       | contāgious } ansteckend   | precaution Vorsichtsmaß-  |
| hēalthy gesund, der Ge- | cātching } ansteckend     | cārry weitertragen [regel |
| fundheit zuträglich     | infēction Ansteckung      | sprēad sich verbreiten    |
| unhēalthy ungesund      | sērious ernstlich, schwer | small-pox Blattern        |
| dēath Tod               | mēasles Masern [fieber    | vaccinātion Impfung       |
| rate Anteil, Betrag     | scārlet fēver Scharlach-  | vāccinate impfen          |
| dīe sterben             | trēatment Behandlung      | compulsory zwingend       |
| epidēmic Seuche         | improve verbessern, Fort- | revaccinātion Wieder-     |
|                         | schritte machen           | impfung.                  |

2. A. I have heard it said that the chāngeableness of the English climate makes it **unhēalthy**. B. A great many people **catch cold** in cōnsequence of the wēather; and the London fog is a frequent cause of **coughs** and **hoarseness**. But after all, a **cold in the head**<sup>1)</sup> is only a slight **indisposition**, and though one hears of a good deal of **rheūmatism** in the low-lying neigh'bourhoods<sup>2)</sup> near the river Thames<sup>3)</sup>, there is never anything like **ague**.<sup>4)</sup> **Gout** is here, as everywhere else, mainly the disease of the upper classes.

A. But was not the **inflūenza** epidemic very severe in London last year? B. Not any worse than in other parts of the country, and not so bad as in many places on the Continent. And then most of the influenza **patients** had nothing worse than an ordinary **cold on the chest**, accompanied by an **attack of indigestion**<sup>5)</sup> and a bad **head-ache** or **tooth-ache**; it was only in the most severe cases that it was followed by **inflammation of the lungs** or **bronchitis**.

|                          |                          |                                |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| chāngeableness Veränder- | hoarse heiser            | attāck Unfall                  |
| cōld Erfältung [lichkeit | hoarseness Heiserkeit    | hēad-ache Kopfschmerzen        |
| catch cold sich erkälten | indisposition Unpäßlich- | tooth-ache Zahnschmerzen       |
| fog dicker Nebel         | gōut Gicht               | [heit inflammātion Entzündung. |
| cōugh (f) Husten         | pātient Kranter          |                                |

3. A. Then I suppose, with ordinary care, it is as easy to **keep in good health** in London as anywhere else. B. Certainly it is. But, on the other hand, there are a great many accidents in the crowded streets; people are continually being carried to the **hōspitals** with **fractured** skulls and **brōken** or **sprained** limbs, caused either

1) Schnupfen; cold on the chest Husten. 2) niedrig gelegene Gegend. 3) spr. temz. 4) spr. āgū, kaltes Fieber, Wechselfieber; fēver dagegen hitziges Fieber. 5) verdorbener Magen, eigentlich Mangel an Verdaulichkeit, Verdauungsschwäche.



by a **fall**, or by being run over. The number of persons (whom) one meets in the streets showing the **scars of healed-up wounds and cuts**, or with an arm or a leg **cut off**, shows how frēquent these accidents must be.

A. Are there many hospitals? B. Yes, we have a great many hospitals in London, each with a large staff of **surgeons** and **nurses**, and besides the regular patients, any poor person who feels **unwell**, but is not **ill** enough to lie in bed, can go to a hospital and receive **mēdical treatment**, as a so-called **out-patient**, until he is quite cured.

|                         |                             |                         |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| to be (keep) in good    | sküll Schädel               | stāff Stab              |
| health gesund sein      | sprain verrenken            | surgeon Wundarzt        |
| (bleiben)               | run over überfahren         | nurse Krankenwärter(in) |
| fracture Knochenbruch;  | scār Narbe                  | cure kurieren, heilen.  |
| zerbrechen, einschlagen | heal up verheilen, zuheilen |                         |

A. In what way does he get the mēd'icīne? B. In some cases it is given him; in others, the **physician**<sup>1)</sup> only writes a **prescription** and the patient has to **get it made up** at a **chēmist's shop**.

A. And are there not also **convalescent**<sup>2)</sup> **homes** in the country, where patients are sent on their **recovery** from severe **illnesses**?

B. Yes, mostly at the sea-side; and there are hospitals for **spēcial diseases**, such as **consumption**; and **asylums** for all kinds of **cripples**, such as **lame** and **humpbacked people**. There are also **estāblishments** for the cure of **squinting**, **deafness**, **stuttering** etc.; and large schools where **blind** and **deaf** and **dumb** children are taught, so that many **blind persons** are as well-educated as those without any **bodily defect**.

A. The air of London on a foggy day always makes me feel **hoarse** and **giddy**, and I should think it was enough to make a **delicate person faint**. B. That is because you are not used to it. Though the London children generally look rather **pale**, their **life** is not on the whole an **unhealthy** one, **excēpt** in the case of the very poorest.

|                          |                                 |                          |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------|
| prescription Vorschrift, | chēmist <sup>3)</sup> Apotheker | recōvery Genesung        |
| make up bereiten [Rezept | chem.'s shop Apotheke           | consumption Schwindsucht |

1) Arzt, auch döctor genannt. Die Universität braucht ein englischer Arzt nicht zu besuchen, sondern nur große Hospitäler, in denen dann zugleich Vorlesungen über alle Zweige der Medizin gehalten werden, die also gewissermaßen medizinische Fakultäten sind. 2) Genesender Reconvalescent; reconvalescent ist kein Englisch. 3) Das Wort apothecary könnte man höchstens für einen deutschen Apotheker anwenden; für einen englischen muß man (dispensing) chemist gebrauchen. Ein Chemiker nach deutschen Begriffen ist an analytical chemist.



|                        |                          |                     |
|------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|
| asylum (s=ß) Asyl, Zu- | deaf taub                | air Luft            |
| fluchtstatt            | stutter } stottern       | giddy schwindelig   |
| cripple Krüppel        | stammer }                | delicate zart       |
| lame lahm              | dumb stumm               | faint } in Ohnmacht |
| humpback } Buckel,     | deaf and dumb taubstumm  | swoon } fallen      |
| hunchback } Buckliger  | defect Fehler, Gebrechen | pale bleich.        |
| squint schielen        |                          |                     |

## Fifty-sixth Lesson.

The Church<sup>1)</sup>.

A. What a fine church that is! B. That is the **cathedral**<sup>2)</sup>. Did you not know that this is the principal town of the **bishopric**?

A. No, I did not know. Then was the old **clergyman** who **preached** the **sermon** this morning the **bishop** of the **diocese**?

B. Yes, that was the new bishop; he was formerly **rector**<sup>3)</sup> of the **parish** of N., but when our bishop was created **Archbishop of Canterbury**<sup>4)</sup> a few months ago, Dr. M. was presented to<sup>5)</sup> this see.

A. I do not know whether most to admire<sup>6)</sup> the interior or the exterior of the cathedral. The slender columns of the centre **aisle**, the richly carved stone-work of the **font** and **pulpit**, the delicate tracery of the **screen**<sup>7)</sup> which divides the **chancel** from the **nave**, and the old polished wood of the **pews**, all lighted by the splendid **stained**<sup>8)</sup> glass windows, have a very beautiful effect. B. Did you also see the fine monuments in the side-**chapel**<sup>9)</sup>?

A. No, I did not see anything but the general effect, as the **bells** stopped and the **organist** began to play (on the organ) directly I went in. By-the-bye, I do not think the **organ** is a very good one. B. No, it is an old one. We must get the **sexton** to show us all over the cathedral when there is no **service** going on. The **vestry**, which is very ancient, is worth seeing, and the **crypt** underneath is also interesting.

1) Vgl. hierzu Lesson 17—19. 2) Kathedrale, Dom; dome heißt Helmdach, Kuppel = cūpola. 3) rector der anglikanische Hauptpfarrer, der den ganzen Bezirk der Pfründe, vicar der nur einen Teil derselben enthält; das Pfarrhaus je nachdem the rectory oder vicarage; curate der Hilfsgeistliche. Andere Bezeichnungen für Pfarrer (bez. Geistlicher) sind noch: parson (mit etwas verächtlicher Bedeutung, „Pfaffe“), minister und pastor (besonders die Pastoren der Sekten), priest (Priester, auch in der englischen Staatskirche), clergyman (Geistlicher, der allgemeinste Ausdruck). 4) Der Erzbischof von C. ist der erste Geistliche der anglikanischen Kirche, der Erzbischof von York der zweite. Der erstere ist auch sozusagen erster Hofprediger, denn er vollzieht alle kirchlichen Handlungen in der königlichen Familie. 5) = appointed to ernannt zu. 6) = which to admire most. 7) eigentlich „Schirm“, hier eine Art Gitter. 8) gefleckt, bunt; stained glass Glas mit eingebrannten Figuren. 9) Kapelle; chapels heißen auch fast alle nichtanglikanischen Kirchen, namentlich die der protestantischen Sekten.



|                          |                              |                             |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| bishop Bischof           | pārish Kirchengemeinde       | chancel Altarplatz          |
| bishopric Bistum         | see (erz)bischöflicher Stuhl | nave Schiff (in der Kirche) |
| archbishop Erzbischof    | slender schlank              | peŵ Kirchenstuhl, Kirchen-  |
| dēan Dean                | cōlumn Säule                 | bell Glocke [stuhl]         |
| dēacon Diaconus          | aīse Flügel eines Chor-      | organ Orgel                 |
| archdēacon Archidiaconus | ganges, Seitenschiff         | sēxton Kirchner, Küster     |
| prēach predigen          | cārve schnitzen              | vēstry Sakristei            |
| prēacher Prediger        | font Taufstein               | crypt unterirdische Kirche, |
| sermon Predigt           | pūlpit Kanzel                | Totengruft                  |
| dīocese Sprengel         | trācery Verzierung           | undernēath unten.           |

2. A. I saw a great many **clergymen** among the **congregation**.  
 B. There is a large body of **clergy**<sup>1)</sup> in connection with every cathedral; and besides, I dare say<sup>2)</sup> many of the **vicars** and **curates** from the other churches in the town, had come in to hear the bishop preach.

A. Does not the bishop always preach? B. Oh no, very seldom. Sometimes on **Communion** Sundays when the **sacrament** is given; and he always performs the ceremony of **confirmation** and sometimes those of **weddings** and **christenings**<sup>3)</sup> when the persons **married** or the children **baptized** belong to important families. What did you think of the service this morning?

A. I could not follow it at all, as I had neither **prayer**-<sup>4)</sup> nor **hymn-book**, and the **clerk**<sup>5)</sup> did not speak very distinctly; I think I distinguished the **Lord's prayer** once, but that was all. The sermon I liked very much. Are all your cathedrals built in this style, with slender Gothic **steeple**s? B. Oh no, they are in every style of architecture; for instance, St. Paul's Cathedral has a round dome or **cūpola**. We can go into the cathedral now, if you like.

congregātion Gemeinde (in der Kirche), hŷmn-book Gesangbuch, stēeple Kirchturm.

3. B. You see, in the old days of **popery** this was an important Rōman Cātholic church; in fact it belonged to an **abbey**. A. That accounts for all these monuments of **priors**, **abbots**, and **abbesses**.

B. Yes, many of them are buried in the vaults below. There are the rŷins of several **cōnvents**<sup>6)</sup> belonging to various **religious orders** in the immediate neighbourhood; a large **mōnastery**<sup>6)</sup>, well worth a visit, on the other side of the river, and a **nunnery**<sup>6)</sup> in

1) Geistlichkeit; Gegensatz: laity Laientum; ebenso clergyman und layman.  
 2) Ich wage zu sagen, ich glaube. 3) vgl. Lesson 17, 3. 4) das berühmte Gebetbuch der anglikanischen Kirche. 5) spr. clerk, hier der Laie, der die Responsorien liest, der Küster; sonst hat das Wort noch viele Bedeutungen wie: Geistlicher (ursprüngliche Bedeutung von clericus), Schreiber, Expedient; Ladendiener, Kommiss u. s. w.  
 6) cōnvent ebenso wie clōister allgemeiner Ausdruck für Kloster; mōnastery kl. besonders für Mönche; nunnery Nonnenkloster; monk und frīar Mönch, nun Nonne.



the very centre of the town. A. I have also been told of a **hermitage** not far off, where a mysterious **hermit** is said to have dwelt until quite recent times.

B. We might make an excursion to-morrow and visit all the ruins. But this church, I believe, is hardly altered from the time when the vestry was used as a **confessional**, and **high mass** was said at the **altar**, over which hung a **crucifix** instead of the plain **cross** now painted on the wall; in that niche stood the figure of a **saint** with a **rosary** in her hand, and **wax tapers** burnt in those sconces underneath. There was also an **altar-piece** representing **angels** fighting with **demons** in order to rescue souls from **purgatory** and carry them to **heaven**. Add to this the smell of the **incense**<sup>1)</sup> and you can imagine the abbey church of five or six centuries ago<sup>2)</sup>.

|                             |                             |                              |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| pope Papst                  | rēcent neu, modern          | tāper Kerze                  |
| pōpery Papsttum             | alter verändern             | sconce Wandleuchter          |
| accōunt for erklären        | confēss beichten            | altar-piece Altarstück,      |
| ābbey Abtei                 | confēssion Beichte          | Altargemälde                 |
| ābbot, pri'or Abt           | confēssional Beichtstuhl    | āngel Engel                  |
| abbess, pri'oress Äbtissin  | māss Messe                  | dēmon Dämon, Teufel          |
| vault Gewölbe               | high mass Hochamt           | rēscue befreien              |
| religious order geistlicher | to say mass die Messe lesen | sōul Seele                   |
| Orden                       | cross Kreuz [tiefung        | purgatory Fegefeuer          |
| hermit Einsiedler           | nīche Nische, Wandver-      | hēaven Himmel                |
| hermitage Einsiedelei       | rōsary } Rosenkranz         | imāg'ine sich einbilden, ein |
| mystērious geheimnißvoll    | bēads }                     | Bild machen von.             |

### Fifty-seventh Lesson.

#### Holidays<sup>3)</sup>.

1. A. The village is being decorated as if for some grand **festival**, and yet to-morrow is only a **workday**; do you know what is going on? B. To-morrow will be the 1<sup>st</sup> of May, which is always **kept as a holiday** in this part of the country.

A. I was told that there are in England only four **holidays** in the year: **Easter Monday**<sup>4)</sup>, **Whit Monday**<sup>4)</sup>, the first Monday in August, and **Boxing Day**<sup>5)</sup>. Is that not correct? B. Quite correct,

1) Weihrauch, auch: mit Weihrauch räuchern; dagegen incense entzünden, entflammen, erbittern. 2) Seite 2, Fußnote 5. 3) Festtag, Feiertag, eigentlich „heiliger Tag“, auch Ferientag. 4) In England werden der 2. Weihnachts-, Oster- und Pfingsttag, ebenso wie der Charfreitag und der Neujahrstag nicht kirchlich gefeiert. 5) d. h. der 2. Weihnachtsfeiertag; woher dieser Name stammt, ist am Ende dieser Lektion gesagt. Übrigens beschenkt man sich in England viel weniger als bei uns; man begnügt sich einfach mit Glückwünschen, für welche die stehenden Formeln sind: I wish you a merry Christmas and a happy New year, oder a merry Christmas and a happy New year to you, oder My (the) compliments for (of) the season.



if you add **Christmas Day**<sup>1)</sup>, as the most important of them all. Those are **bank-holidays**, fixed by act of parliament<sup>2)</sup> some few years back, and all employers are obliged to give their clerks<sup>3)</sup> and work-people a holiday on those days. But there are other festivals of much more ancient and interesting origin, which are observed<sup>4)</sup> by the country people in different parts of the kingdom. For instance, in Cornwall and the other Western counties, **Midsummer Day** is the greatest festival of the year; in Scotland **New-year's Day** and **All-Hallows Eve** or **Hallowēen**, as it is more usually called, are celebrated<sup>5)</sup> with much mirth and festivity; and almost everywhere **Twelfth Night**<sup>6)</sup> is a favourite time for giving balls and parties; and **Shrove Tuesday** is celebrated by the frying of pan-cakes.

|                            |               |             |                |                 |                       |
|----------------------------|---------------|-------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------------|
| dēcorate schmücken, zieren | Whit Monday   | Þfingst=    | ēve            | Þorabend        | [feit                 |
| festival Fēst              | [feiern       | montag      |                | mirth           | Heiterkeit, Fröhlich= |
| to keep a holiday ein Fēst | employē       | Arbeitgeber |                | festivity       | Festlichkeit, Lust=   |
| Christmas (Christmesse)    | Midsummer day | Johann=     |                | barkeit, Freude |                       |
| Weihnachten, abgefürzt     | niſtag        | [Heiligen   | Shrove-Tuesday | Fastnacht       |                       |
| Easter (ē) Oſtern          | [Xmas         | All-Hallows | Fēst           | aller           | pān-cake Þfannkuchen. |

2. A. I have never heard of Twelfth Night, when is it? B. On the sixth of Jānuary, twelve days after **Christmas**. It is the grand winding-up of the Christmas festivities, just as Shrove Tuesday was originally the finish of the **cārnival** before the commencement of the **Lent**<sup>7)</sup> fasting on **Ash-Wednesday**<sup>8)</sup>. In some parts of England, too, every one has a roast goose for dinner on **Michaelmas Day**.

A. And there are some purely religious festivals, are there not? B. Not very many, except among the Rōman Cātholics. There are **Palm Sunday** and **Maundy Thursday**<sup>9)</sup> and **Good Friday**, indeed services are held in the churches every day in **Passion Week**; then there are **Easter Sunday** and **Ascension Day** and **Whitsuntide**<sup>10)</sup>; I think that is about all, except, of course, Christmas.

A. Why is the day after Christmas called **Boxing Day**? B. Because on that day all kinds of servants expect their employers to give them presents, which are called **Christmas-boxes**, because they were formerly mōstly in boxes.

1) d. h. den ersten Weihnachtsfeiertag. 2) d. h. Parlamentsbeschluss. 3) vgl. S. 27, 5. 4) = to keep a festival. 5) celebrate „feiern“ setzt eine Festfeier voraus, die mit volkstümlichen Gebräuchen verbunden ist. 6) auch Twelfth Day Dreikönigstag (6. Januar). 7) dasselbe Wort wie unser „Lent“, dann Fastenzeit. 8) Wednesday Mittwoch, eigentlich Wodanstag. 9) Gründonnerstag; maundy entweder von maund d. h. Korb, weil der englische König früher an diesem Tage aus einem Korb Almosen verteilte; oder von mandatum novum vobis do ein neu Gebot gebe ich euch, nach Joh. 13, 15. 10) Þfingsten; wörtlich: „weiße Sonntagszeit“, weil in der alten Kirche die Neugebauten von Oſtern bis Þfingsten in weißen Kleidern gingen.



A. You have not mentioned any of the Saint's days; do you not keep any of them? B. No, we do not, but the Catholics keep a great many; of which I believe the most important are: **Corpus-Christi, All-Saints'-Day, All-Souls'-Day** and, in Ireland, **St. Pátrick's<sup>1)</sup> Day**. Another well-known religious festival is the Jewish **Passover**, which falls just about the same time as Easter.

A. I suppose you keep little family festivals on the **birthdays** and saint's days of your relations about the same<sup>2)</sup> as we do. B. We do, but not so generally and not in so great a style as you do in Germany.

|                       |         |                |               |             |                  |
|-----------------------|---------|----------------|---------------|-------------|------------------|
| wind up }<br>finish } | endigen | Mích'aëlmas    | Michaels      | Pássover    | jüdisches Ofter- |
| fást                  | fasten  | Good Frīday    | Charfreitag   | fest,       | Pássah           |
| Ash-Wēdnesday         | Ascher= | Ascēnsion      | Himmelfahrt   | birthday    | Geburtstag       |
| mittwoch              |         | Corpus-Christi | Trohn=        | saint's day | Namenstag.       |
|                       |         |                | leichnamsfest |             |                  |

### Fifty-eighth Lesson.

#### Time. (An Invitation).

1. A. **Good morning**, I have called to ask if you will come up and have tea with me one **day<sup>3)</sup>** and spend the **evening**. B. I shall be very pleased, which day would you like me<sup>4)</sup> to come?

A. Any day would suit me. It is for you<sup>5)</sup> to say when you can spare the **time**; you are such a busy fellow, that it is quite a wonder for you to have **half an hour** to waste, much less two or three **hours**. Can you come **to-morrow** or the **day after to-morrow<sup>6)</sup>**? B. Let me see<sup>7)</sup>, **to-day** is **Tuesday**. I am afraid I cannot; to-morrow I have my music-lesson, and the **following day** I go to town in the evening and shall not be back till nearly **midnight**. Then on **Mondays<sup>8)</sup>** and **Fridays** I have such a lot<sup>9)</sup> of homework<sup>10)</sup> to do! I had not finished **last night<sup>11)</sup>** until a **quarter past eleven**.

A. Well, there is no **time** like the **present<sup>12)</sup>**, why dōn't you come **this afternoon**? B. We have a singing-class<sup>13)</sup> after school, so that I could not leave until **half past five**, and that would be **too late**.

A. Not if you were to hasten and come through the park. B. The park is closed at **five o'clock now**.

1) Der Schutzheilige Irlands. 2) ungefähr ebenso. 3) im Deutschen mit dem Genitiv zu übersetzen. 4) Accusativ mit dem Infinitiv; im Deutschen besser mit einem vollständigen Nebensatz zu geben. 5) Es ist Ihre Sache, es kommt Ihnen zu. 6) übermorgen. 7) = consider. 8) im Deutschen mit dem Genitiv der Einzahl zu übersetzen, um die Gewohnheit auszudrücken. 9) familiär für so much. 10) = preparation to be done in the evening for next day's school. 11) besser als yesterday evening, gestern abend. 12) = the present time is the best. 13) = singing-lesson.



A. Oh, I don't think so; I am sure I came through much later than that **the other day**<sup>1)</sup>. B. Not this **month**. It is always closed while there is **still** a little day-light, at a different **hour** in almost every month of the **year**. In **Novēber** and **Jān'ūāry** it closes at five, in **Decēber** at four, in **Septēber**, **Octōber**, **Fēb'rūāry**, and **March** at six, in **A'pril** and **August** at half past seven, and in **May**, **June**, and **Jūly'** not until nine o'clock.

|                              |                           |                       |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| spend zubringen, verleben    | waste vermüſten, verbrin- | Thursday Donnerstag   |
| sūit paſſen                  | to-morrow morgen          | [gen Friday Freitag   |
| ſpāre ſparen, erübrigen,     | Sunday Sonntag            | Saturday Sonnabend    |
| übrig haben                  | Monday Montag             | to be afrāid fürchten |
| busy (ſpr. bizzzy) geſchäft- | Tuesday Dienstag          | midnight Mitternacht  |
| tig, beſchäftigt             | Wednesday Mittwoch        | hāsten haſten, eilen. |

2. A. How come you<sup>2)</sup> to know all about it so exactly? B. Why, I had a good lesson the **day before yesterday**; I started to cross the park, although I knew **it wanted only a few minutes** to closing-time, and the **clock struck five** when I was about half-way. So, of course, when I got to the other side, the gate was shut and there was no one to be seen. I retraced my steps as quickly as I could, but found the gate by which I had entered also shut. It was **not yet** quite dark, and I went **towards** the little side-gate and, by great good luck<sup>3)</sup>, I saw the park-keeper letting himself out, having been (on) his **daily** round of the park after closing the gates. If I had been an **instant**<sup>4)</sup> later, he would have been gone.

A. And you would have had to stay there **all night**<sup>5)</sup>! B. Most likely! He gave me a list of the closing-times for the **whole year** and made me promise to be more careful **in future**.

A. As I should think you certainly ought to be; it would not be very pleasant to have to walk about the park until the **morning**.

B. At any rate I shall not venture this **afternoon**, but I could come and see you either on **Saturday** or **Sunday** or on **Thursday** in **next week**.

A. I shall expect you on Saturday then. But **what o'clock is it?** I must be off<sup>6)</sup>, I think; I have several things to do this **forenoon**<sup>7)</sup>.

B. It is a **quarter to nine**; quite time for me to go to school, too.

A. Well, good-bye<sup>8)</sup>, be sure you don't forget to come on Saturday; it seems like a **century** since we had a good long talk.

1) neulich, franz. l'autre jour. 2) wie kommen Sie dazu. 3) Glück, als günstiger Ausgang; fortune äußeres, zufälliges Glück, Glücksgüter; happiness inneres Glück, Glückseligkeit. 4) Augenblick; noch kürzer als moment. 5) oder the whole night die ganze Nacht; „alle Nächte“ every night. 6) = I must go. 7) better morning. 8) leben Sie wohl; entstanden aus God (good) be with yē (veraltet für you).



|                                         |                        |                            |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------------|----------------------------|
| start aufbrechen, fortgehen             | to retrace one's steps | past Vergangenheit         |
| gate Gartenthür, Garten-                | zurückgehen            | future Zukunft             |
| thor [wieder betreten                   | keeper Wächter         | at any rate auf jeden Fall |
| retrace wieder zeichnen, round Rundgang |                        | venture wagen              |
| step Schritt                            | present Gegenwart      | forenoon Vormittag.        |

## Fifty-ninth Lesson.

## Age. (In a Church-Yard).

1. A. How prettily this little church is situated with its **church-yard** on the slope of the hill! Let us go in and look at it close.

B. Most of the old village churches are in picturesque positions, very often on the top of a hill.

A. What a quantity of flowers there are on all the **graves**<sup>1)</sup>! But I see the dates on some of the **tombstones** are quite recent; I thought in England the **dead** were all **buried** in **cemeteries**<sup>2)</sup> now.

B. That is only in the large towns, the village church-yards are still used as **burial-grounds**.

A. How curious some of these old **epitaphs** are! Look at the inscription on that **tomb** over there. B. That is the family **vault** of the lord<sup>3)</sup> of the manor.

A. **Men** seem everywhere to be especially given<sup>4)</sup> to asserting their family dignity on their tombs. Here are a great many graves of persons who have died in **youth** and even in **childhood**. B. Look, there is a **funeral** coming along the road now. I wonder<sup>5)</sup> whose it is; I have not heard of the **death** of any one in this village.

A. This seems to be some one of importance, for the **hearse** is drawn by four horses, and there is quite a procession of **mourning-coaches**. B. The **coffin** is literally covered with flowers; and what a number of **mourners** of all **ages**: **men**, **women**, and **children**!

|                           |                           |                          |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| church-yard Kirchhof      | inscription Aufschrift    | funeral Leichenbegängnis |
| slope Abhang              | [lexisch vault Gruft      | hearse Leichenwagen      |
| picturēs'que (qu=k) ma-   | manor Rittersgut, Erbgut  | mourn trauern            |
| bury (spr. bery) begraben | assert behaupten          | mourner Trauernder       |
| bur'ial (u=ë) Begräbnis   | dig'nity Würde            | mourning Trauerkleid     |
| bur'ial-ground Begräbnis- | youth Jugend              | coach Kutsche            |
| ëpitaph Grabchrift        | stätte childhood Kindheit | cöffin Sarg.             |

1) Grab, bezeichnet mehr die Grabgrube und den Grabhügel, tomb mehr das Grabmal, daher „tombstone“; das erstere Wort ist auch das familiärere. 2) church-yard in der Nähe der Kirche, „Kirchhof“; cemetery ist weit entfernt von der Kirche, wie in großen Städten, „Gottesacker“. 3) Herr, Oberherr, Freiherr, dann Ehrentitel; lord of the manor Grundherr, Erbherr, Rittersgutsbesitzer. 4) ergeben, geneigt. 5) ich möchte wissen.



2. *A.* They are all **wearing deep mourning**, too; they must be relations. *B.* There is the **grave-digger**, I will ask him who it is. — He says it is an **old man** of a **hundred-and-one years old**, and nearly all these **young people** are his **grāndchildren**.

*A.* **How old** did you say he was? *B.* Over a hundred, he has for some years been the **oldest** inhabitant of the village.

*A.* That is a wonderful (**old**) **age**! *B.* Yes, indeed! Do you see that **little girl** and **boy** over there (yonder)? Those are his **great-grandchildren**, the grandchildren of that stout woman, who is his **eldest** daughter. That tall **man** with a **young lady** leaning on his arm, is his **youngest** son, with whom he lived, and the **girl**, his only **child**, was her grandfather's favourite.

*A.* What a large family! They look as if they might be all the inhabitants of this little village. *B.* Yes, and they are not even quite all here; his **younger** daughter is married and lives in America, and one of his **elder** sons died a few years back<sup>1</sup>). But I suppose we had better slip away while they are still at the **grave**; it seems rather in bad taste for strangers to be seen standing about, looking at a **funeral**.

*A.* Yes, and besides it is quite time we got<sup>2</sup>) on a little farther.

|                          |                      |                        |
|--------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| dig graben               | old age hoheß Alter, | fā'vourite Liebling    |
| digger Gräber            | Greisenalter         | slip schlüpfen, gehen. |
| grave-digger Totengräber | stout stark, kräftig |                        |

### Sixtieth Lesson.

#### The Universe. (A Moonlight Night).

*A.* It is a lovely night, won't you come out on the terrace and look at the **cōmet**? *B.* Is it visible? I have wished very much to see it, but whenever I have looked out, it has either been so cloudy, that no **stars** whatever<sup>3</sup>) were to be seen, or the **moon** was **shining** so **brightly**, that I could not distinguish the comet from a **plānet**.

*A.* It is **bright** enough now, its **tail** reaches half across the **sky**. Look over there towards the **South West**. *B.* How beautiful! Why, its **light** is almost as brilliant as **moonlight**.

*A.* That is considered one of the **nāatural** wonders of the **uni-verse**. *B.* The **fixed stars** also are unūsually bright to-night.

1) Vgl. S. 3, Fußnote 4. 2) = went. 3) wird (wie das französische quelconque) sehr oft nach dem Substantiv gestellt („überhaupt kein“).



A. They will soon fade; there is a faint **light** in the **East**, the **moon will rise**<sup>1)</sup> in a few minutes. And it is only when the **world** is in **darkness**, illumined neither by the **rays**<sup>2)</sup> of the **sun** nor the **moonbeams**<sup>2)</sup>, that we see the full beauty of **starlight**.  
 B. Yes, just as the **sunniest** landscape appears brighter if seen at the end of a **shady** avenue, or from under a **dark** archway.

A. That also explains the wonderful illumination so often seen on the tops of mountains at **sunrise** and **sunset**; the **sun shines** brightly on the hills, while the place where we stand is in **shadow**<sup>3)</sup>.

|                       |                              |                           |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| universe Weltall      | moonlight Mondſchein         | illumination Erleuchtung, |
| tēr'race Terrasſe     | to-night heute abend (nacht) | Erhellung                 |
| cloud Wolke           | fade verbleichen             | sunny ſonnig              |
| cloudy wolfig         | faint ſchwach                | landscape Landſchaft      |
| ſtâr Stern            | dârkness Finſterniß          | shâdy ſchattig            |
| fixed star Fixſtern   | illū'mine erleuchten, er=    | äv'enue Allee, Baumgang   |
| tail Schwanſ, Schweif | hellen                       | ârchway Bogengang.        |

B. There is the moon rising. It is almost a **full-moon**, I suppose. A. It is past **the full**<sup>4)</sup>. In a few days more it will be **in the last quarter**.

B. How quickly the time goes; it seems only a few days ago that **it was moonlight**, when we admired the **crëscent moon** coming home from our picnic<sup>5)</sup>. A. I remember; but that was a fortnight ago<sup>6)</sup>.

B. Don't you think the **new-moon** in the **first quarter** is prettier than it is at **the full**? A. I hardly think anything could be finer than this. But I suppose we must go in now; it is a wonderful thing, in our **climate**, to be able to stand about so long out of doors, admiring the beauties of **nature** on an October night.

B. It is quite warm this evening. I believe that the<sup>7)</sup> farther **North** one goes, the<sup>7)</sup> finer and clearer are the nights. A. I have heard so, too; but I should not feel much inclination for star-gazing in the midst of an **Arctic** winter.

|                                    |                                                  |                   |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| crëscent zunehmend(er<br>Halbmond) | inclination Neigung<br>gaze anſtarren, anſchauen | Arc'tic nördlich. |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------|

1) „aufgehen“, von Geſtirnen, ſonſt „aufſteigen“; ebenſo ſet „untergehen“, ſonſt „ſetzen“. Daher auch ſunrise Sonnenaufgang, ſunſet Sonnenuntergang. 2) ray heller Strahl, beam ſchwacher Strahl. 3) Schatten, Schlagschatten; shade Schatten im Gegenſatz zu Licht. 4) es iſt ſchon Vollmond vorüber; ähnlich the moon is at the full es iſt Vollmond. 5) auch picknick geſchrieben; Landpartie, zu der jeder etwas zu eſſen mitbringt; in England ſehr beliebt. 6) vor 14 Tagen. 7) je — deſto.



## Sixty-first Lesson.

## The Weather.

1. A. Shall we walk home through the woods? B. How is the weather? It looks rather dull, I am afraid it will not keep<sup>1)</sup> fine long enough.

A. There are a good many clouds, but I think it will continue<sup>1)</sup> fine until we get home. Come along<sup>2)</sup>! B. The heat is intense, and there is hardly a breath of air<sup>3)</sup>. I hope we are not going to have a thunderstorm; thunder always brings a spell of bad weather.

A. I will be cooler in the woods. See, there is a bank of mist<sup>4)</sup> lying all along the valley; it is like a thick fog! B. I suppose it is the dew rising from the earth like steam, in consequence of the great heat. I hope it will not wet us.

A. It is already clearing up (off); the wind is rising. B. What a pleasant coolness the wind brings with it after the warmth of the day!

A. The last time I came through this wood was on a splendid, bright day in January. It was a beautiful sight; the hoar-frost covering the bare branches of the trees, glittered in the sun, and made the whole forest look like fairyland. That little river which we just crossed was frozen hard, and looked like a miniature<sup>5)</sup> Swiss glacier<sup>6)</sup>, while the sun was beginning to thaw the snow-drifts on those exposed, overhanging rocks, and every now and then a small avalanche came toppling down into the bed of the stream. B. I have never seen the woods in winter, they must be very pretty in bright weather. But how dark it is getting!

|                         |                              |                           |
|-------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| wēather Wetter          | dēw Tau                      | fāiry Feen-, feenhaft     |
| dūll trübe              | thāw tauen                   | Swiss Schweiz(er)         |
| hēat Hitze              | stēam Dampf                  | snōw-drift Schneewehe     |
| brēathe atmen           | wet naß machen               | overhäng überhängen,      |
| brēath Atem, Hauch      | clēar up (off) sich auflären | vor-springen              |
| thūnder Donner; donnern | warmth Wärme                 | rock Felsen               |
| thūnderstorm Gewitter   | sīght Sicht, Anblick         | avalānche Lawine          |
| spell furze Zeit, Weile | hōar bereist; Reif           | topple fallen, rollen     |
| cool kühl               | hōar-frost Reif              | it gets (is getting) dark |
| coolness Kühle          | bāre fahl                    | eš wird finster.          |
| vāllej Thal             | glitter glitzern, glänzen    |                           |

2. A. We must hurry now, or the storm will overtake us, while we are still in the wood; it is coming much quicker than I expected.

1) bleiben. 2) komm vorwärts! wohlauf denn! 3) = hardly enough air to breathe. 4) Nebeldamm; mist (leichter) Nebel, fog (dicker) Nebel. 5) spr. mīn'ī-at-yur, oder mīn'it-yur, klein. 6) spr. glāshēr oder glāc'ī-er Gletscher, Eisberg.



*B.* It is quite windy all of a sudden; and I think I felt a drop of rain just now. Yes, it is beginning to rain quite fast. Oh, there is a flash of lightning! And what a tremendous clap of thunder!

*A.* We are fairly caught in the storm. It is very near us, too.

*B.* There! It lightens again! What shall we do?

*A.* I think this little side-path leads to a woodcutter's cottage. We had better try to find it and take shelter there. *B.* Yes, that will be best. What a flood of rain, and the wind is blowing like a hurricane!

*A.* We ought to reach the cottage soon. Here is a wood-shed close to the path, let us go in there and wait until the storm is over.

*B.* Look at the lightning, it was just like a tongue of flame; I believe that must have struck somewhere in the wood. Do you think we are safe here?

*A.* Not very; a part of this wood was set on fire by the lightning last year and, the sparks being carried in all directions by the wind, it burned or smouldered for several days.

|                             |                            |                           |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| hurry eilen                 | flash of lightning Blitz   | shelter Schutz, Obdach    |
| overtake einholen, über-    | strahl                     | flood of rain Regenschut, |
| raschen                     | tremendous furchtbar       | Platzregen                |
| all of a sudden } plötzlich | clap of thunder Donner-    | hurricane Orkan           |
| suddenly }                  | fair hübsch, schön [schlag | wood'-shed Holzschuppen   |
| rain regnen; Regen          | fairly völlig, vollständig | strike einschlagen        |
| drop of rain Regentropfen   | lighten blitzen            | spark Funken [chen.       |
| lightning Blitz             | wood'cutter Holzhauer      | smoulder dampfen, rau-    |

3. *B.* I should think there is no fear of anything catching fire now, there is too much water. *A.* Yes. But it was very foolish of us to attempt such a long walk in such doubtful weather. Now we are wet through and there is a terrible draught in this shed; are you not very cold<sup>1)</sup>?

*B.* Oh, no! In fact, I am still quite hot<sup>2)</sup> from running so fast. *A.* I believe it is hailing; hark at the rattling on the roof!

*B.* So it is! And what large hailstones they are! I never saw hail at this time of the year before. *A.* It will soon leave off, I think; there is a break in the clouds over there.

*B.* When it does, we will find the cottage and ask the people to let us dry ourselves at the fire. *A.* I don't suppose they have a fire (alight).

1) I am cold mich friert, es friert mich; nicht I freeze; freeze wird nur von Sachen gesagt = zusammenfrieren. 2) mir ist heiß.



*B.* But I know they have; I can see the **smoke** rising from the chimney over the tops of the trees. *A.* Well, let us go and see. The rain has almost stopped, and the sun is coming out again already. Look at the beautiful **rainbow**.

*B.* Yes, is not the rainbow a lovely **phenomenon** (of nature)? Only it occurs so frequently, that one hardly thinks anything of it.

|                        |                          |                             |
|------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| foolish thöricht       | hail hageln; Hagel       | alight angezündet, brennend |
| doubtful zweifelhaft   | rattle rasseln; Gerassel | rain'bow Regenbogen         |
| wet through durchnässt | hailstone Schloße        | phenomenon Naturerscheinung |
| draught (f) (Luft-)Zug | break Bruch, Zerreißung  | occur vorkommen.            |

## Sixty-second Lesson.

### The Seasons<sup>1)</sup>.

1. *A.* Into how many seasons is the year divided? *B.* Into four: spring, summer, autumn<sup>2)</sup>, and winter.

*A.* Why is the first season called **spring**? *B.* Because the plants then begin to "spring" or grow.

*A.* What changes do you then see in nature<sup>3)</sup>? *B.* The grass grows greener, the plants begin to send up new leaves, and little buds appear on the hedges and trees.

*A.* What does the farmer do in spring<sup>3)</sup>? *B.* He ploughs the land and sows the seed.

*A.* What do birds do in spring? *B.* They build their nests, begin to lay eggs and to hatch their young ones<sup>4)</sup>.

|                                 |                 |                  |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| season (frz. saison) Jahreszeit | farmer Landmann | seed Samen(forn) |
| hedge Hecke                     | plough pflügen  | hatch ausbrüten. |

2. *A.* What kind of season is **summer**? *B.* It is the warmest of the whole year, in which we also have the longest days.

*A.* Which is one of the longest days? *B.* It is Midsummer Day. The three days preceding it, however, are as long; but after Midsummer, the days get shorter and shorter.

*A.* What does the farmer do in summer? *B.* He makes hay, mows (cuts down), reaps, and gathers in the corn.

*A.* What fruits are getting ripe in this season? *B.* Cherries, strawberries, raspberries, bilberries, and currants.

1) Vgl. hierzu Lesson 34 und 35. 2) vom franz. automne; beachte, daß im englischen Worte das n, im französischen das m stumm ist. 3) Vor nature und den Namen der Jahreszeiten fällt gewöhnlich der bestimmte Artikel weg; vgl. L. 49, A. 6 und 7 und N. 61. 4) „ihre Jungen“; vgl. L. 58, A. 3 und N. 99.



|                        |                            |                        |
|------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------|
| hay Heu                | gäther (dh) pflücken, sam- | berry Beere            |
| mōw mähen              | meln, einernten            | strawberry Erdbeere    |
| cut down abhauen       | corn Getreide              | rāspberry Himbeere     |
| rēap raffēn, einernten | cherry Kirsche             | bilberry Heidelbeere   |
|                        |                            | cūrrant Johannisbeere. |

3. A. What season follows then? B. **Autumn**, the time of harvest<sup>1)</sup>.

A. What is harvest? B. It is the in-gathering of the fruits of the earth, such as potatoes, turnips, and cabbages. It is also the time for gathering nuts, blackberries, pears, apples, and plums.

A. What do birds do in autumn? B. Many of them fly (go) to warmer countries, as the swallow, the nightingale, and the starling; but some of them remain with us, as the sparrow, redbreast<sup>2)</sup>, blackbird<sup>2)</sup>, and thrush.

|                      |                        |                        |
|----------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| potāto Kartoffel     | nīghtingale Nachtigall | rēd'brēast Rotkehlchen |
| turnip Rübe          | stārling Star          | blāckbird Amsel        |
| cābbage Kohl         | spārrrow Sperling      | thrush Drossel.        |
| blāckberry Brombeere |                        |                        |

4. A. To which season do we pass after autumn? B. To **winter**.

A. What kind of weather have we (do we have<sup>3)</sup>) generally in this season? B. Very cold weather with snow and ice.

A. What is snow? B. It is water frozen as it falls from the clouds.

A. Of what use is the snow? B. It covers the earth and protects (guards) the seeds and plants from the frost.

A. Of what use is the frost? B. It kills many insects that injure plants.

A. What do children do in winter? B. They amuse themselves on the ice by skating and sliding. They also play with the snow, building snow-houses, making snow-men, and throwing snow-balls.

A. How do we keep our houses<sup>4)</sup> warm in winter? B. By burning wood and coal in our stoves<sup>5)</sup>.

|                    |                        |                             |
|--------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| kīnd Art, Gattung  | kill töten, vernichten | skate Schlittschuh (laufen) |
| protēct beschützen | in'jure schaden        | slide gleiten, huscheln.    |

1) Dasselbe Wort wie unser „Herbst“; es bedeutet aber im Englischen 1) die Erntezeit, die übrigens des kühlen Wetters wegen in England mehr in den Herbst hineinfällt, 2) das Einheimen der Ernte, die eingeheimste Ernte selbst, während die noch auf dem Felde stehende crop heißt. 2) Wenigstens bleiben diese Vögel in England den Winter über da. 3) Familiäre Wendung, namentlich wenn to have die Bedeutung von to get oder to take hat; daher denn auch der Gebrauch von to do. 4) house (s = ß), im Plural s = z. 5) Vgl. hierzu Seite 3, Lesson 1.



## Sixty-third Lesson.

**The Earth<sup>1)</sup>. (A Walking-Tour).**

1. *A.* I should like to go for a walking-tour these holidays. Can you advise me as to<sup>2)</sup> what part of England would be most suitable for it? I do not wish to go to the **Cöntinent**. *B.* There is a great deal of pleasure to be got out of a summer walking-tour in almost any **part of the cöuntry**; even in the **environs<sup>3)</sup>** of London, if you had not time to go farther. For how long do you think of going?

*A.* I shall have about a fortnight or three weeks, so I thought of going by<sup>4)</sup> train to some picturesque **neighbourhood** and then starting on my walk. *B.* The Lake District<sup>5)</sup> is a favourite part of the country for such excursions; especially if you are fond of **climbing up** and going **down steep hills** and **clambering over rocks** and **crag**s. There, within a circumference of a few miles, you<sup>6)</sup> have every kind of **mountain scenery**; **wild ravines**, **marshes**, **defiles**, and **mountain passes**, some of which are not safe for a stranger, unless accompanied by one of the **mountaineers** who act as guides; because, by taking a wrong turning, he may find himself on the brink<sup>7)</sup> of a deep **abyss**.

*A.* But they<sup>6)</sup> say that the **lakes** are, most of them, so small as scarcely to deserve the name. *B.* Some are no larger than **ponds**; but many are deeper than they are wide, and their situation, surrounded by hills, together with the beauty or wildness of their **banks<sup>8)</sup>**, quite makes up for their want of size.

|                           |                           |                        |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|
| tour Rundreise            | clamber mit Schwierigkei- | defile Engpaß          |
| walking tour Spazier-     | ten kämpfend, mit Hän-    | mountaineer Gebirgsbe- |
| reise, Vergnügungsreise   | den und Füßen klettern    | wohner                 |
| to take                   | crag Klippe, Felsenspitze | guide Führer           |
| to go (for)               | circumference Umkreis     | turn(ing) Wendung      |
|                           | (zu Fuß)                  | scenery Landschaft     |
| suitable passend          | scenery Landschaft        | abyss Abgrund          |
| train (Eisenbahn-) Zug    | ravine (i = ē) Schlucht,  | deserve verdienen      |
| climb erklimmen, klettern | Hohlweg                   | surround umgeben       |
|                           | marsh Morast, Sumpf       | make up entschädigen.  |

2. *A.* I should like to hear some further (more) particulars of them. *B.* Well, one of them lies at the very **foot of a mountain**

1) Vgl. hierzu Lesson 20—22. 2) in Bezug darauf. 3) oder en'v'rons (pl.) Umgebung, franz. les environs. 4) Beachte dieses by, deutsch „mit“. 5) im nordwestlichen England, in den Grafschaften Westmoreland, Cumberland und Lancashire. 6) man; vgl. L. 61, F 1b und N. 138, b u. c. 7) Rand (eines Flusses, Sees 2c.), margin (besonders beim Papier), border (äußerer Streifen, Saum). 8) Flußufer; shore Seefüste; coast Meeresküste.



which falls into a steep **declivity**<sup>1)</sup> right to the **strand**. Another is in the centre of a small piece of **level country** and its **shores** are diversified by a number of **gulfs**<sup>2)</sup>, **bays**, **capess**, and **peninsulas**, connected with the land only by narrow **isthmuses**<sup>3)</sup>, many of these form miniature **hârbours**<sup>4)</sup>; and this lake has also a great many little **islands**. Another lake is almost divided in two by a bold **prömontory**<sup>5)</sup>, so that the smaller part is connected with the larger only by narrow **straits**.

A. Have you been there yourself? B. Yes. And I never spent a **plëasanter**<sup>6)</sup> day than when I followed the course of a little **river** from its **source** near the **summit** of a hill, passing many **tributary brooks** and **rivulets**, which are fed from the innūmerable **springs**<sup>7)</sup> that abound on those hills, through beautiful **välleys**<sup>8)</sup> (here called **dales**) to its **mouth**, where it **flowed** into one of the largest lakes. We kept close to the river all the way; indeed more than once we had to cross it at a **ford**, as the path was sometimes on the **left bank** and sometimes on the **right**. At one time it was quite a gentle **slope**; at another, where the river fell over a ledge of **rock**, forming a **cascāde** or **waterfall**, it was a very **steep descent**.

A. I have been told that the scenery in Wales is very fine. B. I believe it is, but I have never been there. Then there is the **chain of mountains**, called the **Peak**<sup>9)</sup>, which is surrounded by uncūltivated **table-lands**, called **moors**.

|                                             |                                              |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| lëvel eben, flach                           | trib'utary unterworfen, ford Furt            |
| diversify verschieden machen, unterscheiden | zinsbar, Nebenbrook (ü) Bach                 |
| penin'sulā Halbinsel                        | riv'ulet fleiner Fluß [sein                  |
| sūmmit Gipfel                               | abound reichlich vorhanden moor Moor. [ebene |

3. A. I have read of the Yorkshire moors. B. In the Peak there are several curious **caverns**, and the country people also show on one of the hills what they call the **crāter** of a **volcano**; but as no **eruption** has ever been heard of, we may safely conclude that it is **extinct**. Then there is the **Border**<sup>10)</sup> Country, that is, the **country round** the Chëviot Hills, which used to be the **boundary**

1) steiler Abhang, slope sanfter Abhang, descent allgemein. 2) Busen, größer als bay Bucht. 3) Landenge, spr. Isthmus oder ismus. 4) Hafen (natürlicher), port künstlich angelegter Hafen. 5) hohes Vorgebirge, cape ein hohes oder niedriges. 6) plëasant gehört zu den Wörtern, die gegen die allgemeine Regel in der familiären Sprache nach deutscher Weise, d. h. mit er und est gesteigert werden. 7) mehr die verborgene Quelle, source die sichtbare, die Fortsetzung des spring. 8) größeres Thal, dale kleineres; das erste Wort franz. Ursprungs (vallée), das zweite deutschen. 9) In Yorkshire und Derbyshire (e = â). 10) border Strich Land, der die Grenze bildet, speziell zwischen England und Schottland; boundary natürliche (geographische) Grenze, auch bildlich; fröntier oder frontiër politische Grenze.



(**frontier**) between England and Scotland. And I have heard some people say there is no place for a walking-tour like the level dusty roads of the Fen country<sup>1</sup>); but I should think such a wide **plain** must be exceedingly uninteresting.

A. I think I should prefer going (like better to go) somewhere near the **sea**. B. Well, in that case, one of the pleasantest tours is to start at Mârgate<sup>2</sup>) and walk all along the South **Coast** to Land's End<sup>2</sup>); sometimes walking over the **cliffs** and sometimes along the **sands** below. In most places, the **waves** wash round the base of the cliffs; in others, where the **coast** is flatter, the **surf** breaks on a long stretch of **sandbank**, which is quite dry when the **tide**<sup>3</sup>) is at the **ebb**; in others again there are **dykes**<sup>4</sup>), like in Holland, to prevent the sea from **overflowing** the low meadows. Such **inundations** are not unusual at **flood-tides**, when the dykes are sometimes entirely washed away. If you decide on this route, you will pass through many pleasant **sea-side** towns; and at Land's End, where the coast is continually exposed to the action of the Atlantic **Ocean**, the scenery of the **sea-shore** is extremely rugged and wild. A. I think your *idé'a* is a very good one. Now my next business must be to find a companion.

|                           |                             |                           |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| cavern Höhle              | cliff Klippe                | meadow Matte, Wiese       |
| volcano Vulkan            | sand Sand, pl. Sandbänke    | inundation Überschwemmung |
| eruption Ausbruch         | wave Woge, Welle            |                           |
| extinct erloschen         | surf Brandung               | sea-side } Seeküste,      |
| dusty staubig             | stretch Strecke, Ausdehnung | sea-shore } Meeresküste   |
| fen Sumpf, Moor           | tide Flut, Strom            | rugged zerflüftet         |
| plain Ebene               | ebb Ebbe                    | business (spr. bizness)   |
| exceeding außerordentlich | overflow überfließen, aus-  | Geschäft, Aufgabe.        |

#### Sixty-fourth Lesson.

#### Spare and Colours. (A Sunset).

1. A. The sun is going down fast. I am afraid we shall not be in time to see the full beauty of the **sunset**. B. We are nearly on the top of the hill now. If we climb up the face of that little cliff, we shall find a rustic seat in a most romantic **situation amidst** the rocks; and that is the best **place** from which to admire the view. Here is the path; it is very **narrow**, but you will not mind its **smallness**, as it is a **short** cut; the **broad** path we have just left is a much **longer** way.

1) Nördlich von Cambridge. 2) also von der südöstlichen bis zur südwestlichen Küste Englands. 3) eigentlich „Zeit“, Ebbe und Flut, oder nur „Flut“ des Meeres; flood Flut d. h. Überschwemmung. 4) oder dike Deich, Damm.



A. This path would be easy enough, if it were not for the **thickness** of the bushes<sup>1)</sup> on both sides and for these **long, slender** blackberry brambles **under** our feet. B. Here we are! You see, from here we can look over the whole **length** of the lake. Is it not a beautiful scene?

A. It is splendid! I was not prepared for a view of such **extēnt**. How **high** is this hill? We seem to have climbed only a **short** distance, and yet what a **depth below** us the lake appears to be! B. I don't think we are much more than a thousand feet **above** the sea. It is not the **height** of the hills or the **size** of the lakes which make this part of the country so pretty; I have been on much **higher** mountains which have not half the wildness and beauty of **colour** that these have. If the **breadth** and **length** of that **small** lake were to be increased tenfold, I don't think it would add to its beauty.

|                           |                              |                        |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------|
| face Borderseite          | smallness Kleinheit          | bramble Strauch, Dorn- |
| rūstic ländlich           | cut Schnitt, Durchgang,      | depth Tiefe [busch     |
| sēat Sitz, Landsitz       | broad breit [Weg             | height Höhe            |
| romāntic romantisch       | thickness Dicke, Dichtigkeit | breadth Breite         |
| situā'tion Lage, Stellung | slender schlank, dünn        | fold -fach.            |

2. A. What a fine **blue** the water is, almost **black** in the shade of those **tall, dark** fir trees. B. Look at the **reddish** and **orange**<sup>2)</sup> **light** which is spreading over the water, reflected from the sky **above**. The trees and bushes round the lake were bright **green** in the sunlight a few minutes ago, and now that the sun has gone down, they seem only a dull **gray** or **brown**.

A. What a number of varied tints<sup>3)</sup> are in the sky<sup>4)</sup>; from the **palest light-blue** to **deep violet**! And the clouds seem to be of every shade of **red: pink, crimson**, and (even) almost **scarlet**; except in the East, where they are **white** with a bright **yēllow** lining. B. I have often thought I should like to be a **great**<sup>5)</sup> artist so as to be able to paint such a scene as this.

A. There are very few painters who could do justice to it<sup>6)</sup>! What they call a sunset is usually a mere **party-coloured** daub. I should say<sup>7)</sup> it must be a most difficult task to give, in such a

1) bush ist nicht ohne weiteres unser „Busch“ = kleiner Wald, sondern vielmehr „Strauch“, „Strauchwerk“, „Gebüsch“. 2) orangegelb, spr. a = ö oder i. 3) matte Farbe, matter Anstrich; hūe eine Mischung von Farben, Farbenshattierung; colour das allgemeine Wort. 4) „Himmel“ im eigentlichen Sinne, heaven im bildlichen und poetischen. 5) geistig „groß“; lārge räumlich „groß“; tall „groß“ von Wuchs; big „groß“ und dick. 6) die es in einer würdigen Weise darstellen könnten. 7) = I should think (meinen).



limited **space** as ten or twelve square feet of canvas, the impression of a **large** expanse of sky. *B.* It is true, one seldom sees a really good representation of a very **wide** landscape. But I think we had better hasten down now, or it will be quite dark before we reach the village.

|                        |                           |                            |
|------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| rēddish rōtlich        | crimson (s=z) farmoisin   | daub schlechtes Gemälde,   |
| vāry verschieden fein  | scarlet scharlachrot [rot | Sudelei                    |
| pale blaß, bleich      | lining Einfassung         | canvas Malerleinwand       |
| vī'olet veilschenblau  | party-coloured bunt       | expanse weite Raum, Fläche |
| pink nelfenartig, rosa |                           | hasten hasten, eilen.      |

### Sixty-fifth Lesson.

#### The Theatre. (A Visit to the Theatre).

1. *A.* Where have you been? It is past 12 o'clock; I began to think you were lost. *B.* **I have been to<sup>1)</sup> the theatre.** After you went out this afternoon, a friend of mine came and asked me to go with him, as he had been offered a **box<sup>2)</sup>**; this being the **first night** of the new **play**.

*A.* And was it a success? Did you enjoy it? *B.* It was splendid! I had heard from some one who had seen a **rehearsal** that it would be very good, but I was not prepared for<sup>3)</sup> anything so perfect in all its details; there was not a **scene** that one could wish altered; and from the **rising of the curtain** until it **dropped**, the eager interest of the **spectators** was never for an instant allowed to flag. It is a long **piece**, too, in **five acts**.

*A.* Is it a **tragedy**? *B.* No; I suppose it would be called a **comedy**, though it is by no means a **farce**. Here is the **play-bill**, you can see by that what a number of **players** there are in it.

*A.* Was there a large **audience**? *B.* Pretty<sup>4)</sup> large; and a very appreciative one. The **applause** was deafening at the end of the **last act**, when the **actors** and **actresses**, who **took the principal parts**, and the **manager** were all called before the **curtain**; a few roughs up in the **gallery** certainly tried to **hiss**; but every one else **applauded** so loudly, that the **hisses** were soon drowned.

|                                                    |                     |                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| thē'atre Theater                                   | rehearsal Probe     | flag erschlaffen, matt werden, abnehmen |
| box Loge                                           | detaīl Einzelheit   | farce Possé                             |
| play Schauspiel                                    | curtain Vorhang     | play-bill Theaterzettel                 |
| enjoy genießen, Gefallen finden an, sich weiden an | eager eifrig        | player } Schauspieler                   |
|                                                    | spectator Zuschauer | actor }                                 |

1) = I went to the theatre; I was at the theatre. 2) vgl. L. 56, 3 und N. 96, 3, Anm. 2. 3) = did not expect. 4) vgl. S. 2, 5.



|                            |                           |                          |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| actress Schauspielerin     | applaud Beifall klatschen | rough (f) roher Mensch   |
| audience Zuhörerschaft,    | deafen betäuben           | hiss auspfeifen; Zischen |
| Publikum                   | part Rolle                | dröwn eräufen, über-     |
| apprē'ciative urteilsfähig | mānage fertig bringen     | tönen.                   |
| applause Beifall           | mānager Theaterdirektor   |                          |

2. A. I wish I could have gone with you; it is a great pleasure to see a good play. I went to the English **Opera** the other night<sup>1)</sup>, but did not think very much of it, though the **scenery** of the **ballet** was very fine. B. Well, if you like we will go together one evening. I shall not be sorry to see the piece once more; and if we go to the **pit**<sup>2)</sup>, it will not cost much.

A. Can we see well enough from there? B. If we get near the front, it is almost the best place in **the house**; we shall have only six or eight **rows** of **stalls** between us and the **stage**.

A. And the **orchestra**<sup>3)</sup>, of course, that is in front of the stage. B. No, in the new-fashioned theatres the orchestra is invisible.

A. Where do the musicians sit then? At the **wings**? B. I believe they are under the stage.

A. We might go to-morrow or next day. I was always very fond of any kind of **acting**; when I was a boy, I always managed to get leave to see the **puppet-show** whenever there was a fair in the town. I always ran after the **jugglers**, **rope-dancers**, and **mountebanks**<sup>4)</sup>; and I remember the great delight with which I watched the first real **stage-play** I ever saw, although it was very badly acted by a **company** of **strolling players**, some of whom did not know their **parts** at all and had continually to wait for the **prompter** to tell them what to say next.

|                          |                         |                          |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| opera Oper               | wing (Seiten-) Couliſſe | jügglor Taschenſpieler   |
| scēnery Dekoration       | act ſpielen             | rōpe-dancer Seiltānzer   |
| rōw Reihe                | lēave Erlaubniß         | delight Entzücken        |
| stall Sperrſitz          | pūppet-shōw Puppen-     | ströll herumwandern, um- |
| stage Bühne              | theater                 | herziehen [Souffleur.    |
| new-fāshioned neumodiſch | fair Jahrmarkt          | prōmpter Einhelfer,      |

### Sixty-sixth Lesson.

#### Amusements.

1. A. As to-day is a holiday, I am going to take a walk and you may **amuse yourselves** in any way you like best. But you had better arrange some regular **games**<sup>5)</sup>, or you will get **tired**

1) neulich (abend); vgl. the other day neulich. 2) hier „Parterre“, sonst „Grube“. 3) oder orchestra. 4) Marktschreier, Quacksalber, einer der auf die Bank steigt (von mount und banco). 5) „Spiel“ nach bestimmten Regeln, play allgemein.



presently and find even **play tedious**. *B.* I should like to have a **ride** on my **rocking-horse**. *C.* Will you give us the **draught-board** and **chessmen**, so that we can have a **game at chess** (or can **play at chess**)? *D.* I would rather play with my **doll**. *A.* I think you had better all go into the garden while I am out this morning and **play at hide-and-seek**<sup>1)</sup> or **catch-ball**, or set up the **ninepins** on the grass in the **bowling-alley** and have a **game at skittles**<sup>2)</sup>. And between the games, when you are tired, you can have a **swing**<sup>3)</sup> or a **see-saw**<sup>3)</sup>. *B.* And may we **play at whip-top**? I want to see whether my **humming-top** will keep up longer than Charlie's **whip-top**. *B.* Yes, only take care not to throw your balls on the garden-beds, so as to break the flowers. Perhaps there will be more wind on your next holiday, and then I will take you to **fly** your **kites** on the common.

|                          |                         |              |                      |          |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|--------------|----------------------|----------|
| amuse ergözen, amüsieren | draught-board           | Damen-       | swing                | Schaukel |
| amusement Vergnügung     | chess Schach            | [brett       | whip Peitsche        |          |
| pleasure Vergnügen       | chessman Figur          | zum          | whip-top Kreisel     |          |
| tedious langweilig       | doll Puppe              | [Schachspiel | humming-top Brumm-   |          |
| ride Ritt                | catch-ball Fangeball    |              | fly fliegen lassen   | [kreisel |
| rocking-horse Schaukel-  | skittle, nine-pin Regel |              | kite Drache          |          |
| pferd [Damenspiel        | bowl Kugel              |              | common Gemeindefand, |          |
| draught (f) Zug, pl.     | bowling-alley Regelbahn |              | Unger.               |          |

2. *C.* What shall we do after dinner to-day? *A.* We might go for a **drive**. How would you like to make a little **trip (excursion)** into the country to **pay a visit** to your aunt? *B.* Or could we not have a **sail**<sup>4)</sup> in the yacht? *A.* Well, we will see. And in the evening, while the little ones **amuse themselves** with their **toys**, we will have a game at chess or **draughts**. *C.* Yes, or perhaps Father might let us have just one game at **billiards**, if we are very careful not to drop the **cues**. *A.* You will have to be contented without that, for your Father and Mother have a **dinner-party** this evening and will want the **billiard-table** for themselves and their **company**. But if you like, I will play you a **waltz**, and you can choose **partners** and have a fine **dance** just as though<sup>5)</sup> you were at a grand **ball**. *D.* That will be splendid. And may

1) Verstecken, wörtlich „Verstecken und Suchen“. 2) Unsere deutsche Art des Regelspiels kennt man in England wenig; hier ist ein beliebtes Vergnügen, bowls, gemeint, welches auf einem platten Rasen, dem bowling-green, gespielt wird, wobei eine Kugel der andern nachgeworfen wird, und es namentlich darauf ankommt, daß die später geworfenen der zuerst geworfenen nahe zu liegen kommen. 3) swing kunstvolle Schaukel, see-saw (auch seesaw) eine einfache, wie sie sich z. B. Kinder auf Bauplätzen durch Auflegen eines Balkens quer über einen andern machen. 4) wir wollen eine Wasserfahrt machen. 5) = if.



we finish up with a game at **forfeits** or **blindman's buff**? *B.* Blindman's buff is the best, and let me be **blindfolded** first. *A.* Very well, but if I lose any more time now, I shall not get my **walk** before dinner.

|                       |                                                             |                          |                                            |                                                                       |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| take, go for          | { a drive(ride) Spa-<br>zierfahrt (Spazier-<br>ritt) machen | to have<br>to go out for | { a sail eine<br>Segelfahrt<br>[Rennschiff | pârtner Dame (beim Tan-<br>dance Tanz; tanzen [zen)<br>for'feit Pfand |
| trip                  | Ausflug, kleine Reise                                       | yacht                    | Bergnügungsschiff                          | büff Schach, Buff                                                     |
| trip into the country |                                                             | toy (Tand)               | Spielzeug                                  | blindman's buff Blinde-                                               |
| Landpartie            |                                                             | cue Dueue                |                                            | blind'fold die Augen ver-                                             |
|                       |                                                             | waltz Walzer             |                                            | binden.                                                               |

3. *A.* Let us have a **game at cards**<sup>1)</sup>; I have just **drawn a blank** in the **löttery**, and I want some lively **recreation** to help me to forget my disappointment. *B.* Why, you have only **lost** the price of the **löttery-ticket**.

*A.* But I **laid a wager** that I should **win the highest prize**, and that has greatly increased my **loss**, just as it would have added to my **gain** if I had **won**. *B.* You were very foolish; as foolish as the **gambler** who **stakes** his money on a **cast of the dice**.

*A.* Well, here is a **pack**<sup>2)</sup> of **cards**. Shall we begin? *B.* I am no **card-player**, but I will willingly **take a hand**<sup>3)</sup>, if it is only for **pastime**<sup>4)</sup>, not for money. Let us have a game at **whist**.

*A.* I have **shuffled the cards**. You **cut**, and I will **deal** them. It is your turn to **lead**. *B.* What are **trumps**?

*A.* Clubs (diamonds, hearts, spades). *B.* I have a very bad **hand**<sup>5)</sup>. Either **follow suit**, or **trump** it.

*A.* How many **tricks** have you? *B.* We have the odd trick, because I had the ace, king, queen<sup>6)</sup>, and knave of trumps. I hope we shall win the **rubber**<sup>7)</sup>.

|                                               |                                    |                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| blank Niete                                   | stake (ein)setzen                  | dī amond (Diamant) Car-                                   |
| rēcra'ation Erholung                          | cast werfen; Wurf                  | heart (Herz) Coeur [reau                                  |
| disappointment Enttäu-<br>schung, Mißgeschick | dīe, pl. dice Würfel               | spade (Spaten) Pique                                      |
| wāger Wette                                   | pastime Zeitvertreib               | follow suit Farbe beken-<br>nen, zugeben                  |
| to lay a wager wetten                         | shuffle mischen                    | trick Stich                                               |
| the highest prize das<br>große Loß            | cut abheben                        | odd überzählig                                            |
| incrēase vermehren                            | dēal austheilen, geben             | an odd trick ein Trick (jeder<br>Stich über die 6 ersten) |
| gain Gewinn                                   | lēad ausspielen                    | ace Aß, Daus                                              |
| gāmbler Spieler                               | trump Trumpf; trumpsen,<br>stechen | knave Bube (Unter).                                       |
|                                               | club (Kreuz) Treff, Eichel         |                                                           |

1) „Karte“ zum Spielen, map „Landkarte“. 2) Pack, Bündel; p. of cards ein Spiel Karten, a game at cards Kartenspiel. 3) = mitspielen. 4) oder noch besser: if we only play for love of the game (umsonst). 5) schlechte Karten. 6) Dame. 7) Wir werden den Robber d. h. von 3 Spielen 2 gewinnen.



## Sixty-seventh Lesson.

**The State**<sup>1)</sup>. (The Houses of Pârliament<sup>2)</sup>).

1. A. Have you been over the **Houses of Parliament** yet?

B. I have not been inside them. Are **strangers** allowed to go in?

A. Yes; when Parliament is not sitting, admission may be, free of charge, obtained at the Lord **Chamberlain's** office. But for assisting at a debate, one has to ask for an order<sup>3)</sup> from the Lord Chamberlain, or from the Spēaker<sup>4)</sup>, or a member of parliament<sup>5)</sup>. We will go this morning, if you like. B. I should like so very much; I have heard they are well worth a visit.

A. Here we are at Wēstminster. And this is the office where we must get the pass. B. Who is the Lord Chamberlain?

A. A **functionary** of the **court**. It is usually a **nōbleman** who fills this **place**, and his principal **charge** is to make arrangements for all the **royal** festivities. B. What a number of handsome rooms! What are they all used for?

A. That I cannot tell you. This is the **House of Lords**<sup>6)</sup>. Over there is the **throne** which is occupied by the **Queen** when she opens **Parliament**. The **princes** and **princesses** stand or have seats on the steps of the throne, and the **courtiers** and **maids of honour** are grouped round them according to their **rank**. B. Is the cēremōny of **coronation** also performed here?

A. No, the **sōvereigns** of England, on their **accession**, are **crowned** in Westminster Abbey. The **regalia**, that is, the **crown**, **sceptre** etc. are kept in the Tower of London<sup>7)</sup>. See, this is the **House of Commons**<sup>8)</sup>. B. What is really the difference between the **Lords** and **Commons**?

A. The great difference is that every English **peer**, such as a **duke**, **mârquis**, **earl**<sup>9)</sup>, **viscount**, or **bâron**<sup>10)</sup>, has a right to sit in the House of Lords; while the members of the House of Commons are chosen by the people as their representatives.

1) Vgl. hierzu Lesson 23—26. 2) franz. parlement, deutsch Parlament. 3) Ausländer erhalten eine Zutrittskarte zu einer Sitzung des Parlaments bei ihren Gesandtschaften, z. B. Deutsche auf der deutschen Botschaft, Carlton House Terrace, N. 9. 4) eigentlich „Sprecher“, beim Unterhaus „Vorsitzender“, „Präsident“. Er heißt „Sprecher“, weil er im Namen des Parlaments bei wichtigen Angelegenheiten zu „sprechen“ hat; übrigens bezieht er auch einen festen Gehalt von 5000 Pfd. Sterling jährlich. Der Präsident des Oberhauses ist der jeweilige Justizminister, the Lord (High) Chancellor (Ranzler). 5) abgefürzt M. P.; so auch „der Abgeordnete für N.“ the member for N. 6) auch the Upper House genannt. 7) früher Staatsgefängnis. 8) das Haus der Gemeinen (Nichtadligen), auch the Lower House Unterhaus. 9) earl ein englischer Graf, count ein ausländischer. 10) Die hier genannten Personen gehören zum hohen Adel, nobility; die letzten vier führen den Titel Lord und werden mit my lord, ihre Frauen mit my lady angeredet.



|                              |                       |                            |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| state Staat                  | member Abgeordneter   | crown krönen; Krone        |
| to be over besichtigen       | functionary Beamter   | perform ausführen          |
| inside innerhalb, drinnen    | court Hof             | accession Thronbesteigung  |
| admission Zutritt            | courtier Hofmann      | regalia Zeichen der könig- |
| free of charge unentgeltlich | arrangement Anordnung | lichen Würde, Krönungs-    |
| chamberlain Kammerherr       | handsome (handlich)   | schmuck                    |
| of'fice Amtsstube, Bureau    | hübsch, nett          | peer Pair, Reichsbaron     |
| assist (at) beimohnen        | maid of honour Ehren- | viscount Vicomte, Vice-    |
| debate Debatte, Erörte-      | dame, Hofdame         | graf                       |
| rung, Besprechung            | group gruppieren      | representative Vertreter.  |
| order Schein, Zutrittskarte  | coronation Krönung    |                            |

2. *B.* But I am sure I have read of a Marquis speaking in the House of Commons. *A.* Yes, but that was the son of a nobleman, and the **title** really belonged to his father; the eldest son of a Duke is usually called a Marquis and the eldest son of an Earl, a Viscount<sup>1)</sup>.

*B.* And they do not sit in the House of Lords until they hold the title in their own right<sup>2)</sup>? *A.* No; not even the Queen's sons are peers until they are created Dukes.

*B.* I thought the royal Dukes were called **Grand-Dukes**. *A.* Oh no! We have no Grand-Dukes in England. Grand-Duke, **Archduke**, **Elector**, **Ländgrave**, and **Count** are only our English names for German titles, though we call the wife of an Earl a **Countess**.

*B.* The English **Crown Prince** is called the Prince of Wales; does that **principality** really belong to him? *A.* No, I believe he has the revenues<sup>3)</sup> of the **Duchy** of Cornwall, but none of the other royal **dukes** have estates in the **counties** from which they take their names; thus the Duke of Cön'naught has nothing really to do with the **prövince** of Connaught in Ireland.

*B.* I suppose a great many members of parliament belong to the **aristocracy**. *A.* Yes, especially the members for country **districts**, because the **pěasants**, who are the electors in those cases, often choose their landlords, so that there are a good many country **bäronets**<sup>4)</sup> in the House of Commons. On the other hand, in the towns the **burgesses**<sup>5)</sup> often elect a celebrated lawyer or a city **knight**<sup>4)</sup>.

*B.* What is that? *A.* Why, on the occasion of any particular festival in the city, the **Lord Mayor** and some of the principal

1) Der älteste Sohn eines hohen Adligen erhält also bei Lebzeiten seines Vaters einen niedrigeren Titel als der letztere. 2) = in selbständigem Besitz (nach dem Tode ihres Vaters). 3) Einkünfte, spr. rēvenue oder revēue. 4) Der bāronet und knight (Ritter) gehören zu dem niedern Adel (gēntry), ihr gemeinsamer Titel ist Sir vor dem Taufnamen, z. B. Sir Walter Scott. 5) Bürger eines Fleckens, einer Gemeinde, Wahlbürger; citizen Staatsbürger, Weltbürger, Stadtbürger.



**aldermen** are frequently **knighted**, and then they bear the title of **Sir**, the same as a baronet, only that it is not hereditary.

|              |                  |          |                   |            |                     |
|--------------|------------------|----------|-------------------|------------|---------------------|
| archdūke     | Erzherzog        | estate   | Grundstück, Land- | lawyer     | Jurist, Rechtsan-   |
| eléctor      | Kurfürst, Wähler | besitz   |                   | walt       |                     |
| principality | Fürstentum       | peasant  | Bauer, Landmann   | knicht     | zum Ritter schlagen |
| dūchy        | } Herzogtum      | landlord | Gutbesitzer,      | hereditary | erblich.            |
| dūkedom      |                  |          | Grundeigentümer   |            |                     |

3. *B.* By whom then are the members of parliament really chosen? I suppose by only a small section of the **population**.

*A.* They are chosen by the male **inhabitants** of the **country**; every one of **her Majesty's subjects**, whether he **resides** in the **capital**, or in any **city**<sup>1)</sup>, **market-town**<sup>1)</sup> or **village**, has a right to vote, provided only that he pays a certain small amount of rent and **taxes**; so that of course a **beggar** or one who lives on **alms** is excluded.

*B.* I have heard you have no **chancellor** appointed by the **king** or **queen** as our **Imperial Chancellor** is. *A.* Not exactly; the **prime-minister** fills a similar **office**, but he is virtually chosen by parliament. In fact, parliament makes the laws, and all the **officers**<sup>2)</sup> of the **state**, from the **ministers** to the **policemen**, have to **administer** them; if the House of Commons is not satisfied with the **administration**, a new **ministry** is formed.

*B.* Then it seems that the **reigning monarch** has no voice at all in the **government**<sup>3)</sup> of the **nation**. *A.* Very little; at any rate in comparison to the power enjoyed by the **German Emperor** or the **sovereigns** of most of the **empires** and **kingdoms** of Europe. It has been said that our **constitution**, which we call a limited **monarchy**, is so very limited as to be more like a **republic**.

*B.* I should very much like to hear a **debate** in the House of Commons. Is it possible to get admission in the evening? *A.* It is not easy; but I should think you, being a **foreigner**<sup>4)</sup>, might very likely get an order from the German **ambassador**<sup>5)</sup>. We might as well go there now and try.

*B.* What a number of my **countrymen** there seem(s) to be in London! I would not live here on any account<sup>6)</sup>. *A.* I suppose every one likes his **native country**<sup>7)</sup> best. The **citizens** of London are proud of their big **city**.

1) Über city und town siehe Lesson 22, 2. 2) hier „Beamter“. 3) government Art und Weise der Regierung, reign (ā) Regierungszeit, ebenso die Zeitwörter govern und reign; ebenso im Französischen gouvernement und gouverner, régner und régner. 4) Ausländer, nicht zu verwechseln mit strānger Fremder. 5) vgl. S. 47, 3. 6) auf keinen Fall. 7) native eingeboren; native country Heimatland, Vaterland; für Deutsche auch „fatherland“, welches Wort jedoch immer einen etwas ironischen Beigeschmack hat.



|              |                     |                           |                     |                       |               |
|--------------|---------------------|---------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| mârk-et-town | Marktflecken        | appoint                   | bestimmen, er-      | poli'ceman            | Polizeidiener |
| vote         | abstimmen           |                           | nennen              | administer            | verwalten     |
| provided     | vorausgesetzt       | impērial                  | kaiserlich, Reichs- | (in) comparison       | (to) (im)     |
| amōunt       | Betrag              | prime-minister            | erster Mi-          | Vergleich, Verhältnis | (zu)          |
| rent         | Zins, Miete, Pacht- | nister, Ministerpräsident |                     | constitution          | Verfassung    |
| tax          | Steuer [zahlung     | similar                   | ähnlich             | limit                 | beschränken   |
| bēggar       | Bettler             | virtual                   | der Kraft nach,     | ambassador            | Gesandter     |
| âlms         | Almosen             | that'sächlich             |                     | countryman            | Land(3)-      |
| chancellor   | Kanzler             | poli'ce (i = ē)           | Polizei             | mann.                 |               |

## Sixty-eight Lesson.

## Justice. (A Court of Justice.)

1. *B.* What is that large building over there? *A.* Those are the new **law-courts**<sup>1)</sup>. All **cases** used formerly to be heard in the **courts of justice** at Westminster, but, as the population of London increased, there came to be so many **law-suits**, that it was found necessary to erect this new building for the various **tribūnals**.

*B.* Can we go in? *A.* Oh, yes! We can go into the galleries and listen to the **pleading** of the **advocates**<sup>2)</sup>. There is a clause in our **code of laws** which declares that every court must be open to the public, so that no **verdict**<sup>3)</sup> would be **lawful** which was not given in a perfectly open court.

*B.* Are there several courts in this one building? *A.* Yes, there are several sitting now; but if we go into this one, it will be enough, as the arrangements are much the same in all. See, there is the **judge** over there, and the **barristers** are just below him; then there are all the different **solicitors** concerned in the **trial**, and the **jury** is at the other side of the room.

*B.* Which is the **prisoner**? *A.* There are no prisoners here, as this is not a criminal court. Here the **accused** person is called the **defendant**, and the **accuser** the **plaintiff**. They are seated on those benches, together with some of the **witnesses**.

*B.* Do you know what this law-suit is about? *A.* I think it is an **action** for libel, and the defendant **pleads justification**<sup>4)</sup>; that is, that the **accusation** he made was well-founded; it is the **counsel** for the **defence** who is speaking now.

*B.* I should think **judgment** would be given for the defendant;

1) in the new Palace of Justice, Fleet Street in London, 1882 vollendet.  
 2) Advokat, Rechtsanwalt, auch counsel(lor) genannt; diese zerfallen in zwei Klassen, barristers (von bar die Gerichtsschranke) Advokaten 1. Klasse, und attörneys und solicitors Advokaten 2. Klasse, Notare; lawyer ist Jurist überhaupt, kann also auch „Richter“ (judge) sein. 3) Ausspruch, Urteil, dafür auch sentence, judgment.  
 4) Rechtfertigung, hier Freisprechung.



from what the **lawyer** is saying the accuser seems to be a **good-for-nothing fellow**<sup>1)</sup>. *A.* It is impossible to **judge** without hearing all the **evidence**; there is scarcely any **injustice** that a clever lawyer cannot represent as **just**.

*B.* And are not the **jury-men** themselves sometimes carried away<sup>2)</sup> by an advocate's oratory? *A.* If any one thinks that a **verdict** is **unjust**, he can **appeal**; that is to say, he can have the **case tried** over again in a higher court; and if he is still not satisfied, he can take it again into a yet higher one; the final **court of appeal** is the House of Lords.

|                   |                         |                |                     |          |                         |
|-------------------|-------------------------|----------------|---------------------|----------|-------------------------|
| jūs'tice          | Gerechtigkeit,          | tri'al         | gerichtliche Unter- | witness  | Zeuge                   |
|                   | Rechtspflege            |                | suchung, Verhör     | action   | Rechtshandel, Klage     |
| law-court         | Gerichtshof             | jūry           | Schwurgericht, Ge-  | libel    | Schmähschrift           |
| court(of justice) |                         |                | schwornenbank       | evidence | Ergebnis der            |
| tribū'nal         | } Gericht               | jūry-man       | Geschworne          |          | Beweisaufnahme          |
| incrēase (s=ß)    | sich ver-               | prisoner       | Gefangener          | oratory  | Redekunst, red-         |
|                   | mehren, zunehmen        | criminal       | Verbrecher; ver-    |          | nerische Leistung       |
| law-suit          | Prozeß                  |                | brecherisch         | appeal   | appellieren, seine      |
| plead             | vor Gericht sprechen    | accuse         | anklagen            |          | Sache vor einen höhern  |
| clause            | Klausel, Bedingung      | accusation     | Anklage             |          | Gerichtshof bringen;    |
| code of laws      | Gesetzbuch              | accused person | Ange-               |          | Berufung, Appellation   |
| lawful            | gesetzlich              | defendant      | klagter             | final    | endlich, letzt, höchst. |
| concerned (in)    | beteiligt               | accuser        |                     |          |                         |
| try               | gerichtlich untersuchen | plaintiff      |                     |          |                         |

2. *B.* You say that this court does not **sentence** persons to **imprisonment** if they are found to be **guilty** of an **offence**.

*A.* No, but they are sometimes **arrested** on leaving<sup>3)</sup> the court.

*B.* And what happens then? *A.* They are taken before a **magistrate**<sup>4)</sup> and **charged** with the **crime**. If they then cannot prove their **innocence**, they are **committed for trial** at one of the criminal courts. It is at these courts that **murderers** and **robbers** are tried and, if found guilty, are **condemned to death** or to be **imprisoned** for long terms.

*B.* Is **capital punishment**<sup>5)</sup> often really carried out in England? *A.* Yes, in cases of wilful **murder**.

*B.* And do not these courts sometimes **acquit** the prisoners? *A.* Certainly, the trial sometimes ends in an **acquittal**, but not often, as the magistrate would not send a person for trial unless he had pretty strong proofs of his **guilt**.

*B.* The police courts are also open to the public, I sup-

1) „Taugenichts“; ein Beispiel, mit welcher Leichtigkeit das Englische Adjektive bildet. 2) = greatly influenced. 3) beim Verlassen. 4) Polizeirichter, nicht Magistrat, vgl. S. 9, 4. 5) durch den Strang.



pose. A. Yes, but there is nothing very interesting to hear there; only to listen to a list of **punishments** given to a set<sup>1)</sup> of **thieves, pickpockets, sharpers, vagabonds, and rascals** of all descriptions; with now and then the story of some poor wretch who has been **taken up** for trying to make away with himself; and a great many quarrels, in which perhaps one woman has **insulted** another, and the other has given her a **box on the ear** by way of **chastisement**; and they both continue to **revile** and **abuse** each other even in the court.

B. What **pēnalties**<sup>2)</sup> does the magistrate usually inflict? A. He sends people to **prison** for a short time and, in many cases, inflicts **finēs**.

B. Have you in England any lawyers paid by the state? A. Yes, what we call **crown-lawyers**<sup>3)</sup>; the **Attörney-general** and **Solici-tor-general** are the principal.

|                             |                            |                           |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| sentence verurteilen        | robber Räuber              | rascal Schurke, Schuft    |
| imprison ins Gefängnis      | condemn verdammen          | wretch elend, unglücklich |
| werfen                      | term (bestimmte) Zeit      | take up einfangen, ver-   |
| imprisonment Gefängnis      | capital punish- } Todes-   | haften                    |
| guilt Schuld                | ment } strafe              | make away with one's      |
| guilty schuldig             | pain of death              | self sich umbringen       |
| offence Vergehen            | carry out ausführen, voll- | insult beleidigen         |
| arrest arretieren, festneh- | strecken                   | box on the ear Ohrfeige   |
| charge with a crime mit     | wilful vorsätzlich         | by way of als             |
| einem Verbrechen be-        | acquit freisprechen        | chās'tisement Züchtigung  |
| lasten, eines Verbre-       | acquittal Freisprechung    | revile schelten           |
| chens anklagen              | pickpocket Taschendieb     | abuse schimpfen           |
| innocence Unschuld          | sharper Gauner             | inflict auferlegen        |
| commit for tri'al in Un-    | vagabond Landstreicher     | fine Geldstrafe.          |
| tersuchungshaft nehmen      |                            |                           |

### Sixty-ninth Lesson.

#### The Army. (The Horse-Guards<sup>4)</sup>.)

1. B. What is that music? It sounds most like **drums** and **trūm-pets**. A. It is a military **band**. Here they come, a **troop of horse**<sup>5)</sup>; it is a **squadron of lancers** out to **exercise**.

B. Do they often **parade** through the streets? It must interfere very much with the traffic. A. They do not go along very narrow streets; one often meets them in the neighbourhood of the Horse-guards<sup>4)</sup>.

1) Anzahl, verächtlich statt a good many. 2) gerichtliche Strafe, mehr gebräuchlich als punishment. 3) Kronanwälte, gesetzliche Ratgeber der Krone. Einen eigentlichen Staatsanwalt, public prosecutor, der öffentlich im Namen des Staates Anklage erhebt, giebt es in England nicht. 4) die Leibwache zu Pferde; sodann das Amtsgebäude des Oberbefehlshabers der britischen Armee in Whitehall (London), vor dem meist zwei Gardereiter zu Pferde Wache halten. 5) horse Reiterei, Kavallerie vgl. L. 53, 6c und N. 80, 2.



*B.* Are we near there? *A.* Yes; look over there where the **sentinel** on horseback<sup>1)</sup> **mounts guard** at the entrance. Listen, the **drums** are **beating** to **relieve the post**, the **sentry** now **on duty**<sup>2)</sup> will **go off guard** in a moment, and another will take his place. I come here sometimes of a morning<sup>3)</sup> to watch them **drill**.

*B.* What is the use of his standing there perfectly still, in that wind? I should think both the man and the horse must be fearfully cold. *A.* It is not much more than a matter of form; but he allows no one to enter who does not know the **watchword** for the day. Certainly that archway is not such a good protection as a **sentry-box**.

*B.* Are there **soldiers** always stationed in London? *A.* Oh yes, always several **detachments** of the **guards** and one or two **regiments** of **foot**<sup>4)</sup>.

*B.* Those are the well-known **life-guards**<sup>5)</sup>, I suppose, who are said to be a regiment of gentlemen. *A.* They are a fine set of men, but that is not true. In fact there are very few gentlemen by<sup>6)</sup> birth amongst the **privates** in any **division** of the **army**, and those few are only the idle scamps who are obliged to **enlist**<sup>7)</sup>, because they have failed to pass the officers' examinations. They are usually considered the worst men in the **service** and very seldom rise even to the **rank** of **non-commissioned officers**.

|                           |                             |               |                             |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------|
| ârmý Heer, Heerwesen      | sëntinel                    | } Schildwache | to be stâtioned stationiert |
| guârd Wache               | sëntry                      |               | sein, sich an einem Orte    |
| the guards die Garde      | môunt guard auf die Wache   |               | befinden                    |
| guârdsmân Gardist         | ziehen, Wache halten        |               | detâchment Abteilung,       |
| drum Trommel              | reliëve ablösen [kommen     |               | Kommando [Gemeiner          |
| band Musikcorps           | go off guard von der Wache  |               | privâte d. gemeine Soldat,  |
| squâdron Schwadron        | drill einexerzieren         |               | scamp unnützer Mensch,      |
| lâncer Lanzenreiter, Ulan | watchword Losung (S-        |               | Taugenichts                 |
| parâde Parade; in P. auf- | wort), Parole               |               | enlist anwerben, in den     |
| ziehen [thun              | sëntry-box Schilderhaus     |               | Dienst treten               |
| interfere with Eintrag    | söldier (jer) Soldat        |               | non-commissioned officer    |
| trâffic Handel, Verkehr   | stâtion Station; hinstellen |               | Unteroffizier.              |

2. *B.* The **guardsmen** consider themselves something better than the rest of the army, do they not<sup>8)</sup>? *A.* If you come to that<sup>9)</sup>, almost every regiment has a fancied superiority over some other; though an outsider cannot see much difference between them. Thus, I believe the **lancers** and **hussârs**<sup>10)</sup>, who form the **light horse**,

1) zu Pferde. 2) im Dienst. 3) = in the mornings. 4) Fußsoldaten, Infanterie; vgl. S. 52, 5. 5) Leibgardisten, Gardes-du-corps. 6) von. 7) England hat noch nicht die allgemeine Militärpflicht. 8) vgl. S. 19, 6. 9) = as far as that goes. 10) spr. uss = üzz, Husar.



affect to despise the **dragoons** and **cuirassiers**<sup>1)</sup>, who are the **troopers** or **heavy cavalry**; while all the **mounted soldiers** look down<sup>2)</sup> on the **infantry** and **artillery-men**.

*B.* The **pay** of a private is very small, I believe. *A.* It is small, but considering that he is supplied with food and clothing, it is enough. A **soldier's life**<sup>3)</sup> is much easier than a civilian's<sup>4)</sup> of the same class, although the young **recruits** often find the discipline very distasteful.

*B.* And has a private any means of rising above his **comrades**? *A.* By steady good behaviour he can become **corporal** and **sergeant**<sup>5)</sup>. And for great bravery in exceptional cases, such as saving the **colours** of the regiment in a **battle**, he is sometimes rewarded by being made **ensign**; and then, having once, as it is called, **risen from the ranks**, he can become **general**, if he has sufficient talent and good fortune.

*B.* An ensign is a **standard-bearer**, is he not<sup>6)</sup>? *A.* Yes, his duty is to carry the **standard** before the regiment. He is also the lowest officer.

|                            |                                |                           |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| fancy einbilden            | trooper Reiter                 | exceptional ausnahms-     |
| superiority Überlegenheit  | mounted beritten               | weise, Ausnahme-          |
| outsider Außenstehender    | pay Sold                       | colour Farbe, pl. Farben, |
| affect sich den Schein ge- | recruit Rekrut [scheulich      | ensign Fähnrich [Fahne    |
| despise verachten          | [ben distasteful ekelhaft, ab- | beärer Träger.            |

3. *B.* Do the officers rise rapidly in the English army? *A.* That depends very much on circumstances; in time of **war** I have known a young **lieutenant**<sup>7)</sup> rise to the rank of **major**<sup>8)</sup> in the course of a few months; while, on the other hand, one often sees a grey-haired **captain**. Above the rank of **colonel**<sup>9)</sup>, their promotion depends almost entirely on their ability. A general's **aides-de-camp**<sup>10)</sup> or **adjutants** are called **staff-officers**, and the officers of a **field-marshal's staff** are often themselves **lieutenant-generals**<sup>11)</sup> and **major-generals**<sup>12)</sup>.

*B.* At what age do they **retire on half-pay**<sup>13)</sup>? *A.* Mostly not until they are quite old, but it is not unusual for them to have a two-years' **furlough** several times during their term of service.

*B.* Do the officers usually hold **posts** of danger in battle? *A.* Yes, a **captain** has to march in front of his **company**; lieutenants are often sent out in command of<sup>14)</sup> small parties of **scouts**,

1) spr. quērassēr'. 2) stolz herabsehen. 3) Soldatenleben. 4) Civilist, Nichtmilitär. 5) spr. sārjant. 6) vgl. S. 19, 6. 7) Gewöhnliche Aussprache: leŭtēnant, doch auch lūtēn'ant. 8) nicht zu verwechseln mit māyor. 9) Oberst, spr. carnēl. 10) spr. ād-de-kong. 11) Generalleutenant. 12) Generalmajor. 13) sich pensionieren lassen. 14) mit dem Kommando über.



the most dangerous of all duties; and even the **surgeons** are sometimes killed.

*B.* And the regimental bands, have they also to go into battle?

*A.* No, only the **buglers** and **drummers**. I believe the beat of the drum is almost as inspiring to an English soldier as the sound of the *bägpipes*<sup>1)</sup> to a Highlander. You know we often read in descriptions of battles that "the **battalion** moved forward **with**<sup>2)</sup> **drums beating**".

*B.* I have heard of the **voluntēers**<sup>3)</sup>. In what do they differ from the other soldiers? How are they paid? *A.* They are not paid at all. They are simply young civilians, who band themselves together<sup>4)</sup>, choose officers, and undertake to come forward for the defence of the country in case of a foreign invāsion. They have several **musters** during the summer, when they are trained to **patrol** and other military duties and are taught the use of **artillery**. The government supplies them with **guns**<sup>5)</sup>, and many of them become very expert **rifle**men.

*B.* It seems to me that your standing army is a similiar institution to the companies of **mercenary** soldiers that were so much employed in the middle-ages. *A.* Perhaps so; but with this difference, that our soldiers only fight for their own country.

|                             |                            |                             |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| căptain Capitän, Haupt-     | surgeon Wundarzt, Miliz-   | patröl patrouillieren,      |
| mann                        | tärarzt                    | Streifwachen unter-         |
| promōtion Beförderung       | regimēntal Regiment's-     | nehmen                      |
| stăff Stab                  | [sion bŭgle Horn           | artillery ſchweres Geschütz |
| half-pay halber Sold, Pen-  | bŭgler Hornist             | expert erfahren             |
| fur'lough Urlaub [ment      | drŭmmer Trommler           | rifle Büchse                |
| pârty Abteilung, Detache-   | inspirit beleben, anfeuern | rifleman Schütze, Jäger     |
| scout Schütze, Streifwache, | muster Musterung           | mercenary (soldier)         |
| Patrouille                  | train einexerzieren        | Mietsoldat, Söldner.        |

### Seventieth Lesson.

#### The War. (Reminiscences of an Army Doctor.)

1. *A.* Have you heard the news from the seat of war<sup>6)</sup> that an **armistice** is declared? *B.* Yes, I have been thinking all the time that the **army** which calls itself **victorious**, though its **exploits** only consist in the **capture** of a few towns whose **garrisons** were

1) Sackpfeife, Dudelsack, Lieblingsinstrument der Bergschotten, der Hochländer.  
 2) unter. 3) Freiwillige (zur Verteidigung Englands), etwa 200 000 stark, nicht zu verwechseln mit unsern Einjährig-Freiwilligen (voluntēering soldier doing his year of service). 4) = form themselves into a band. 5) Flinte, das Snider-Gewehr.  
 6) Kriegsschauplatz.



not strong enough to offer a substantial **defence**, is rather shy of **giving battle**<sup>1)</sup>. I fancy they are not quite sure of being able to **carry the day** and are half afraid to attack the **enemy** lest they should be **defeated**.

A. I hope that during this **truce** both parties will decide to **make peace**. B. I hope so, too. It was an act of madness for those two nations to **make war** on each other; they are too equally matched for the war to end in the **conquest of either country**. Many of the **besieged fortresses** are so strong, that it will be impossible to **take** them by **assault**, and many months must elapse before either side can **gain** a complete **victory**. In the meantime the country will be terribly impoverished both by the **pillage** of the enemy and the **contribution** to its own army.

|                  |                |                        |                      |                      |
|------------------|----------------|------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| reminiscence     | Erinnerung     | to carry the day       | die siēge            | Belagerung           |
| âr'mistice       | } Waffenstill- | Schlacht, den Sieg ge- | besiēge              | belagern             |
| truce            |                | stand                  | winnen               | besiēger Belagerer   |
| exploit          | Heldenthat     | defeat                 | schlagen; Niederlage | assault              |
| capture          | Wegnahme, Ero- | make peace             | Frieden              | elapse               |
| berung           | [Besatzung     | schließen              |                      | vergehen, verfließen |
| garrison (s=ß)   | Garnison,      | make war               | Krieg führen         | impoverish           |
| to be shy        | sich scheuen   | madness                | Tollheit, Wahn-      | arm machen,          |
| to give battle   | eine           | match                  | gleichkommen [sinn   | ausjaugen            |
| Schlacht liefern |                | to be matched          | gleich sein          | pillage              |
|                  |                |                        |                      | Blünderung           |
|                  |                |                        |                      | contribution         |
|                  |                |                        |                      | Kriegssteuer,        |
|                  |                |                        |                      | Beisteuer.           |

2. A. You have yourself seen active **warfare**, I believe. B. Yes, I have been with various armies in several **campaigns**. I was with the celebrated **warrior**, General Hävelock, on his famous **march** to the relief of Lück'now<sup>2)</sup>.

A. But you did not fight yourself? B. I was a surgeon, not a soldier; but the accounts of the **heroism** and the sufferings of the garrison roused the **warlike** spirit in every one who heard them. That garrison never dreamed of a **surrender**, although every day there were fresh **deserters** from among the few natives who had remained faithful, until they were so few as not to be able properly to man the **ramparts**, and had to move about to whichever **tower** or **bastion** the **besiegers** seemed to be directing their assault against for the time<sup>3)</sup>; so few, that they had to remain for 18 or 20 hours at a stretch, fighting in the **moats** and **trenches**, and were at last unable to spare enough men to make a **sally**, which, in the earlier part of the **siege**, had always succeeded in **putting their**

1) Bgl. franz. livrer bataille, auch ohne Artikel; aber to fight a battle. 2) in Ostindien, im September 1857 während des großen Aufstandes der Indier gegen die englische Herrschaft. 3) zur Zeit, zu dieser Zeit.



fōes<sup>1)</sup> to flight and stopping the bombârdment for a while; so surrounded by spies as not to be safe even in the citadel. In those times every man was a hero, every woman a heroine, so that it was not wonderful that I, being a young man, should also have fought in the midst of the combatants.

A. That must have been a terrible time. B. It is impossible to describe the excitement of that march; often a retreat was ordered immediately after a victory, (when the vān-guard<sup>2)</sup> were most strongly tempted to pursue the flying<sup>3)</sup> enemy) either because such a pursuit would have led them into an ambush or because the rear was threatened with an attack. We had very little baggage with us, and most of the men had to sleep without tents, while the roar of the cānnon<sup>4)</sup> and the roll of the musketry were heard almost day and night.

|                            |                              |                                      |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| war'färe Kriegsdienst      | man bemannen, besetzen       | spy Spion                            |
| campāign Feldzug           | bāstion Basti                | combātant Streiter, Kām-             |
| warrior Krieger, Kriegsz-  | stretch Ausstreckung         | excite aufregen [pfer                |
| relief Entsatz             | [mann at a — in einem Zuge,  | excitement Aufregung                 |
| hēro Held                  | hintereinander               | retrēat Rückzug                      |
| hēr'ōine Heldin            | trench Laufgraben            | pursue verfolgen                     |
| hēroism Heldenmut          | spare erübrigen              | pursuit Verfolgung                   |
| rōuse erheben, anfachen    | sally Ausfall; einen Aus-    | ām'bush Hinterhalt                   |
| warlike kriegerisch        | fall machen                  | rēar <sup>5)</sup> Nachhut, Nachtrab |
| surrender Übergabe [läufer | flight Flucht; to put to fl. | tent Zelt                            |
| deserter Deserteur, Über-  | in die Flucht schlagen       | musketry Musketenfeuer.              |

3. A. The natives were not so well-armed as the English, were they? B. Those who had been soldiers before the mutiny had, of course, fire-arms and bayonets, with powder-flasks and cartridge-boxes in quite as good order as we had. And whenever our guns and ammunition fell into their hands, there were plenty who knew how to load the cānnon and fire them at (against) us. The houses in Lucknow were riddled by cannon-balls and canister-shot; and Sir Henry Lawrence<sup>6)</sup> was killed by a bomb that must have been thrown from one of his own mortars.

A. But where could they get the gunpowder from? B. I don't know, but they always had plenty.

A. What kind of guns were in use at that time? It was before the invention of the needle-gun. B. Oh yes! We had rifles;

1) Feind, stärker als enemy (allgemein); fiend der böse Feind, Teufel. 2) Vorhut, Vortrab, vom franz. avant-garde. 3) fliehend, eigentlich „fliegend“; im Infinitiv, Präsens und Präsens-Participium steht öfter fly statt flee. 4) Plural; vgl. S. 53, 6 c und N. 80, 2. 5) vom franz. arrière(-garde). 6) Der ältere Bruder des berühmten Oberkommissars während des Aufstandes.



and many of the **mutineers** were skilful **marksmen**, having been trained to **shoot at the target**. I myself had an old **double-barrelled gun**, but I fought with the **butt-end** of it quite as often as I **shot** with it. For the rest, I had learned **fencing** from a first-rate **fencing-master** and found that I could **cut** and **thrust** and **parry** with a heavy **sword** much more successfully than might have been expected. The **blade** of my sword was snapped in two at last; but the **hilt** and the **scabbard** I have saved as mementoes.

|                            |                             |                          |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| mūtiny Aufstand            | gūnpowder Schießpulver      | cut schneiden, hauen     |
| mutinēer Aufständischer,   | nēedle-gun Zündnadelge-     | thrust stoßen, stechen   |
| Aufrührer                  | mehr                        | pārry parieren, abwehren |
| pōwder Pulver              | mārksman Schütze            | sword Schwert            |
| flāsk Flasche, Horn        | to shoot at the tārget nach | blade Klinge             |
| cārtridge Patrone          | der Scheibe schießen        | snap schnappen, bersten  |
| box Tasche                 | bārrel Lauf (einer Flinte)  | snap in two entzwei-     |
| ammūnī'tion Munition       | dōuble-bārrelled doppel-    | springen, zerbrechen     |
| riddle durchbohren, durch- | butt-end Kolben [läufig     | hilt Griff               |
| löchern                    | fence fechten (auf dem      | scābbard } Scheide       |
| cānister-shot Kartätschen  | Fechtboden)                 | shēath }                 |
| mōrtar Mörser              | first-rate ausgezeichnet    | memēto Andenken.         |

4. *A.* Some native tribes also joined the **rēbels**, did they not? *B.* Yes, and they had armed themselves with all kinds of **wēapons**<sup>1)</sup>: **pikes**, **javelins**, **battle-axes**, and some carried a kind of **lānce**; some were only armed with **clubs** and I saw a few throwing stones out of **slings**; their chiefs had **pistols** and **carbines**; and all, without exception, had **daggers** and were quite ready to **stab** with them, too, if they got the least chance.

*A.* I should not think all those out-of-the-way<sup>2)</sup> weapons were very formidable when used against regular soldiers. *B.* The javelin is the most formidable of them; it flies through the air as fast as an **arrow** from the **string**, and only a large **buckler**, such as the **archers** used to carry, would be a sufficient protection against it; while the man who throws it does not need to expose himself so much as the archers had to do when **bending** their **bows**. Many persons have been struck by a javelin without having any **idē'a** where it was thrown from.

*A.* I should think a narrative of your adventures would form an interesting book. *B.* I have been through many **campaigns** since then, but none so remarkable as the Indian Mutiny. I was last with the army sent to **ōccupy** E'gypt<sup>3)</sup>.

1) Waffe, alles was gelegentlich zur Verteidigung benutzt werden kann; arms (pl.), richtige Schutz- und Trupps Waffen. 2) ungewöhnlich. 3) Im Jahre 1882.



A. It is a wonder to me<sup>1)</sup> that the English soldiers with their tight-fitting clōthes and **stiff collars** can fight at all in hot clīmates. B. There is a great deal of difference between an English soldier in full **regimentals** with **ép'aulets**, **shoulder-band**, **scarf** and **gold-lace**, and the same soldier in Egypt with his smart cap and **cockade** exchanged for a light **helmet**, and a **knapsack** strapped on his back over a loose jăcket.

|                      |                         |                              |           |
|----------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------|-----------|
| tribe Stamm          | string Schnur, Sehne    | rēgimēn'tals (pl.)           | } Uniform |
| pike Pike            | buckler, shield Schild  | ūniform                      |           |
| jăvelin Wurfspeer    | archer Bogenschütze     | shōulder-band Achselklappe   |           |
| battle-axe Streitaxt | to bend the bōw den     | scārf, sash Schärpe          |           |
| club Keule           | Bogen spannen           | lace Riße, Treffe            |           |
| sling Schleuder      | nārrative Erzählung     | smārt schmuck                |           |
| cārbine Karabiner    | advēnture Abenteuer     | cockāde Kokarde              |           |
| dăgger, pōniard(i=y) | tīght dicht, eng        | hēlmet Helm                  |           |
| Dolch                | fit passen              | knāpsack Tornister           |           |
| stab erstechen       | tight-fitting enganlie- | strap Riemen; mit Riemen be- |           |
| arrow Pfeil          | gend                    | festigen.                    |           |

### Seventy-first Lesson.

#### The Marine. (A Visit to a Lighthouse.)

1. A. I want to go over<sup>2)</sup> and look at the **lighthouse**, and your father said you would show me the way. B. I shall be very happy to do so. Will you hire a **boat** and let me **row** you across to the island, or shall we go by the little **ferry**?

A. I think the ferry will be the best; if we were to take a boat, we should have to leave some one in charge of it when we **landed** on the other side. B. Very well; then come this way, please, down to the **landing-stage**. The **ferry-man** is over on the other side, we must wait a few minutes till he comes back.

A. I cannot see anything of him on the other side. B. That is because there is a tiny natural **hārbour** there. You will see him come out in a minute between those two big rocks.

A. Yes, there he comes! I see him! B. I shall ask him to take the **helm** and **steer**, and let me take the **oars**.

A. He will not trust you with them, will he? B. Oh yes, he will. I often go out with him and he has taught me to **row**. He used to be a **pilot**, and he tells the most splendid stories about **sea-fights**, great **ādmirals**, and the **pirates** that used to infest the seas when he was a jolly young **mariner**.

1) = I am very much surprised. 2) hinüber.



A. Well, I suppose we must **embark** in this curious little **vessel**, it does not look as though it could weather a storm. B. Oh, we are entirely sheltered by the island here; besides the **ferry-boat** does not ply in stormy weather.

A. Then how do the people in the lighthouse get food? B. They have to lay up a good store, for sometimes they have no communication with the **main-land** for a week at a time<sup>1)</sup>. When it is absolutely necessary to take them provisions, the **life-boat** goes over with a **crew** of coast-guards<sup>2)</sup>.

|                         |                                 |                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------|
| mari'ne (i=ē) Marine,   | tiny winzig, klein              | vessel Fahrzeug           |
| Seewesen                | helm }                          | as though als ob [halten  |
| lighthouse Leuchtturm   | rudder } Steuerruder            | wēather widerstehen, auß- |
| sail Segel; segeln      | steer steuern                   | ply hin- und herfahren    |
| mariner } Seemann,      | oar Ruder                       | lay up einsammeln, an-    |
| sailor } Matrose        | to trust one with jem.          | store Vorrat [schaffen    |
| boat Boot               | etwas anvertrauen               | main-land Festland        |
| row rudern              | pilot Lotse                     | absolute unumschränkt,    |
| ferry Fähre             | [chung pirate Seeräuber [machen | unbedingt                 |
| charge Aufsicht, Bewa-  | infest belästigen, unsicher     | provision Nahrungsmittel  |
| landing-stage Landungs- | jolly lustig, fröhlich          | life-boat Rettungsboot    |
| platz, Landungsbrücke   | embark (sich) einschiffen       | crew Schiffsmannschaft.   |

2. A. Here we are at the other side. This is certainly quite a miniature **port**<sup>3)</sup>! B. Yes, is it not? I believe in old times, before the lighthouse was built, the smugglers used to **put in** here and **disembark** their **cargo**. When they were digging the foundations of the lighthouse, they came upon<sup>4)</sup> a cave, in which were hidden a quantity of **cordage**, two or three rusty **anchors**, and quite a large **raft** with a piece of **cable** attached, as though to enable it to be **towed** along by a boat.

A. And you think all those things must have belonged to smugglers? B. Certainly they must, for none of the **fishermen** owned them. Shall we ascend the lighthouse now?

A. Yes. — Is this the **lantern**? We have soon reached the top. What a beautiful sea-view! B. Look at that **fleet** of fine **ships** lying in the **roads**! I should so like to be a **sailor**!

A. What, would you like to be a **cabin-boy** on a coaling-vessel? B. No, but I should like to enter the **nāvy**<sup>5)</sup> and be a **mid-shipman** on a **man-of-war**; or I might go as apprentice **on board** one<sup>6)</sup> of the big **merchant-men**.

1) = for a whole week together. 2) Küstenwache, welche an der ganzen englischen Küste stationiert ist. 3) über port und harbour vgl. S. 40, 4. 4) stoßen auf. 5) bezeichnet die Kriegsmarine, marine das Seewesen im allgemeinen. 6) an Bord eines.



A. Do you know anything about **navigation**? Have you learnt the use of the **compass** and so on? B. Not yet; but I should soon learn all that. I know a young man who went to sea<sup>1)</sup> a few years ago, and he is first **mate** now and hopes soon to be **captain**.

A. I suppose you can tell me what all those different ships are that we see. B. Oh yes! These three that are **lying (riding) at**<sup>2)</sup> **anchor** just below us are **ships of the line**<sup>3)</sup>; they belong to the Channel-squadron. The one with some sailors in the **round-top** and a long narrow **flag** flying besides the **Union-Jack**<sup>4)</sup> is the **flag-ship**, and that is the admiral's **pennon**<sup>5)</sup>. And that great steamer over there with two **decks** is a **passenger-ship bound for**<sup>6)</sup> Australia; you can see the long rows of **cabin-windows**.

A. And what is that ship with three **masts**, approaching so fast with all **sails set**? B. That is only a large private **yacht**. But do you not think we had better go back now?

A. Yes, I think so.

|                             |                              |                           |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| smuggler Schmuggler         | fisherman Fischer            | navigation Schiffahrt     |
| put in einlaufen            | own als sein Eigentum an-    | mate Steuermann           |
| disembark(sich)aus[schiffen | fleet Flotte [erkennen       | squadron Geschwader       |
| cargo Schiffsladung         | road Reede                   | round-top Mastkorb        |
| dig graben                  | cabin Kajüte                 | flag Flagge               |
| cordage Tauwerk             | cabin-boy Schiffsjunge       | pennon Fähnchen, Banner   |
| rusty rostig                | coaling-vessel Kohlen[schiff | steamer } Dampfer,        |
| anchor Anker                | midshipman Seekadett         | steamboat } Dampfschiff   |
| raft Floß                   | man-of-war Kriegsschiff      | deck Berdeck              |
| cable Tau                   | appren'tice Lehrling         | row Reihe                 |
| tow ins Schlepptau neh-     | merchant-man Rauffahr-       | to have all sails set mit |
| men, bugfieren              | teischiff                    | vollen Segeln fahren.     |

### Seventy-second Lesson.

#### Travelling. (A Journey to Scotland.)

1. A. I am going to<sup>7)</sup> **Scotland** next week. I should like to **set out** early on Monday morning, but I have not yet decided how **to travel**. B. There is not much to choose between<sup>8)</sup> the different **lines of railway**; it depends which **terminus**<sup>9)</sup> is easiest to get to.

A. But I don't want **to go by rail** at all, if I can help it<sup>10)</sup>. I want to see as much as possible of the country on my **way**, and I certainly cannot do that by rushing through it in an **express-train**.

1) = to become a sailor. 2) vor; to cast anchor vor Anker gehen. 3) Linienschiffe. 4) die kleine britische Nationalflagge. 5) als Zeichen, daß der Admiral an Bord ist. 6) bestimmt nach. 7) reisen nach. 8) = one line is not to be preferred to the other. 9) großer Endbahnhof, station die kleineren Bahnhöfe, die Zwischenstationen. 10) wenn ich es hindern, anders machen kann.



Fancy going from London to Ed'inburgh in  $8\frac{1}{2}$  hours, as I hear the **mail-train** now does. *B.* Well, all **trains** are not express; why not go by a slow one?

*A.* A **slow-train** that stops at every **station** is very tedious and uncomfortable, and the **carriages** are overcrowded half the time.

*B.* I don't see how you are to go, if you are so very particular. You can't very well take a **special-train**<sup>1)</sup> and insist on its going slowly. Perhaps you might get permission to ride<sup>1)</sup> on a **luggage-train**, that creeps along and yet does not stop often.

*A.* Nonsense! But I will tell you what I should really like: to have a good strong horse and **go** all the way **on horseback**<sup>2)</sup>, **riding** each day as far as I liked and **putting up** each night at a village inn. *B.* Why, it would take weeks to get to Edinburgh in that way, you might almost as well **go on**<sup>3)</sup> **foot**. It might do<sup>4)</sup>, if you could **ride post**, but there are no **post-horses** to be had now. They have disappeared together with the **stage-coaches** and **post-boys**. The very<sup>5)</sup> inns are going to ruin, and you might have some difficulty in getting a **night's lodging**. The **turnpikes** are done away with; and one meets nothing on the **high-roads** now except **carrier's waggons**<sup>6)</sup>, **cyclists**, and a few **pedestrians**.

|                                        |                            |                               |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| trāvel reisen (in einem Lande)         | māil-train Postzug         | stāge-coach Postkutsche       |
| trāveller Reisender                    | slōw-train Bummelzug       | pōst-boy } Postillon          |
| set out (for) \ abreisen               | spēcīal-train Extrazug     | postilion } Postillon         |
| leave (for) / (nach)                   | lūggage-train Güterzug     | nīght's lodging Nacht-        |
| rail Eisenstange, Schiene              | uncōmfortable ungemüt-     | lager, Nachtquartier          |
| rāilway Eisenbahn                      | lich, unbequem             | pike Piste, Gabel             |
| to go by rail mit der Eisenbahn fahren | cārriage Wagen             | turnpike Schlagbaum           |
| to ride pōst mit der Post fahren       | overcōwd überfüllen        | to do away with abschaffen    |
| rush rauschen, stürzen, eilen          | partīc'ūlar wählerisch     | hīgh-road Landstraße          |
| exprēss-train Kourierzug,              | insist (on) bestehen (auf) | cār'rier Fuhrmann             |
| eilzug, Schnellzug                     | nōnsense Unsinn, dummes    | cyclist Radfahrer             |
|                                        | put up einkehren [Zug      | pedēstrian } Fußgänger,       |
|                                        | inn Gasthaus, Wirtshaus    | foot'-travel- } Fußreisender. |
|                                        | stage Bühne, Poststation   | ler                           |

2. *A.* It is a pity; I should have enjoyed a **journey**<sup>7)</sup> by a **coach and four**<sup>8)</sup>, past<sup>9)</sup> one **milestone** after another along the pleasant country roads; only stopping for a few minutes at the

1) eigentlich „reiten“, sodann von allen Arten des Fortkommens, also hier „fahren“. 2) zu Pferde, reiten. 3) zu. 4) anehen. 5) sogar, selbst. 6) oder wagon, großer vierrädriger Lastwagen; cart, kleiner als wagon, gewöhnlich zweirädrig; carriage allgemein für ein Fuhrwerk. 7) Landreise, voyage Seereise. 8) vierspännige Kutsche, zu ergänzen with four horses before (to) it; ähnlich a coach and pair eine zweispännige Kutsche. 9) = going past (über — hinaus, an — vorbei).



posting-houses to take the tired horses out and put fresh ones in; and then off again, with a crack of the postilion's<sup>1)</sup> whip, faster than ever! B. And a good heavy fall of snow in the evening, and the post-boy takes a wrong turning at a cross-road, in spite of the finger-post that he did not consider it necessary to read, and presently the wheels stick in a rut and then over goes the coach<sup>2)</sup>; steps, axletrees, and pole are all broken to splinters, and as it is impossible to get the door open, you have to be pulled out through the window, not<sup>3)</sup> the most dignified way of alighting from a carriage. After all that, you may think yourself fortunate if you can get a wheel-barrow to put your trunks and p̄arcels in, and a man to act as your guide by a round-about way, probably only a footpath, to the next village.

|                            |                       |                         |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| it is a pity es ist schade | cross-road Kreuzweg   | dig'nify würdigen, ver- |
| milestone Meilenstein,     | finger-post Wegweiser | edeln                   |
| Meilenzeiger               | wheel Rad             | dig'nified würdevoll    |
| posting-house Posthalte-   | rut, track Geleise    | get out } aussteigen    |
| rei, Poststation           | step Rutschentritt    | alight }                |
| put (take) out ausspannen  | axletree Achse        | get in einsteigen       |
| put in (oder to) anspannen | pole Stange, Deichsel | fortunate glücklich     |
| crack knallen; Knall       | splinter Splitter     | wheel-barrow Schubkar-  |
| whip Peitsche              | door Rutschenschlag   | ren                     |
| turning Wendung            | pull out herausziehen | round-about way Umweg.  |

3. 4. Of course, there are two sides to every question; but we have heard of accidents on the railways: a boiler sometimes bursts through the carelessness of a stoker, or a locomotive<sup>4)</sup> goes off the line, or a viaduct breaks down, or a collision occurs through the mistake of a signal-man or guard; for even railway officials are not quite infallible. But joking apart, I have a six weeks' holiday and, instead of going for a sea-voyage, which I should find very dull, or travelling on the continent, for which I should have to get a passport, and which would also be very expensive, I should like to spend it in seeing as much as I can of England and Scotland. And, as you are such an old traveller, I want your serious advice as to the best way of doing this. B. I think the best way would be for you to take the train every morning to some town about 30 or 40 miles farther on your road, spend the rest of the day in exploring the country all round your stopping-place, sleep at an hotel and go on again next morning.

1) seltener postillion. 2) = the coach falls over. 3) zu ergänzen which is (not). 4) oder en'gine.



A. I should like that plan very well, but what (can I do) about the **luggage**? I could not take my **portmanteau**<sup>1)</sup> everywhere with me; I should lose half my time in **packing** and **unpacking**. B. You should only take a **wallet** or, at most, a small **carpet-bag** and send your heavy **luggage** straight on to your **journey's end**; don't you know some one in Edinburgh who would take care of it till your **arrival**?

A. No, I have no acquaintance there. B. Well, if you were to leave it all ready at your **departure**, I could send it off, so that it should **arrive** about the same time as you.

A. Thank you, then I will take your advice. Let us go round to the **station** and see when the **trains leave**<sup>2)</sup> in the morning. B. Very well. — There is a **time-table** here in the **waiting-room**. I see there is a train at 7.50, would that be too early for you?

A. I should have to be here by a quarter to eight to take my **ticket**. That will do very nicely. B. You must make up your mind where you will first **break**<sup>3)</sup> your **journey**. I shall come round on Monday morning to see you off<sup>4)</sup>. Good-bye for the present<sup>5)</sup>!

|                          |                              |                          |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| boiler (Dampf-) Kessel   | apart beiseite               | departure Abreise        |
| stoker Heizer            | passport Paß                 | time-table Fahrplan,     |
| vi'aduct Eisenbahnbrücke | expensive teuer, kostspielig | Stundenplan [mer         |
| collision Zusammenstoß   | explore ausforschen, erfor-  | waiting-room Wartezimmer |
| sig'nal-man Bahnwärter   | pack einpacken [schen        | ticket Fahrkarte, Billet |
| guard Schaffner, Zug-    | unpack auspacken             | make up one's mind sich  |
| official Beamter [führer | wallet Felleisen, Tornister  | entschließen             |
| infallible unfehlbar     | cârpel Teppich               | come round wiederkom-    |
| joke scherzen, spaßen    | carpet-bag Reisetasche       | men, wiederkehren.       |

### Seventy-third Lesson.

#### Measures and Weights. (Marketing<sup>6)</sup>.)

1. A. I have such a bad cold to-day, that I cannot venture out<sup>7)</sup>, so you must go and do the marketing for me. B. Very well, I shall soon be ready. What do you want me to get?

A. Well, first you must go to the **butcher's** and buy a nice joint of meat. B. What sort of a **piece** would you like? And how large?

A. Either beef or mutton, I don't mind which<sup>8)</sup>. It should be about **12 pounds**<sup>9)</sup>, but a few **ounces** more or less will not matter<sup>10)</sup>.

1) Vgl. S. 19, 2. 2) abfahren. 3) unterbrechen. 4) wörtlich „fortsehen“ d. h. warten, bis der Betreffende fortgefahren ist, ihn abreisen sehen. 5) auf Wiedersehen! 6) vgl. hierzu Lesson 51 und 53. Die englischen Maße und Gewichte sind sehr verwickelt. 7) = venture to go out. 8) = which of the two. 9) = Pfund, abgekürzt lb. Das englische Pfund hat 16 Unzen oder Lot = 16 ounces. 10) it does not matter es schadet nichts.



Then you must go to the **grocer's** for the tea and sugar and take particular notice that he gives you good **measure**; I don't know whether there is anything the matter with<sup>1)</sup> his **scales**, but I am sure the last tea I bought was not full **weight**. *B.* I will take care; I believe the **tongue** of the scales sticks sometimes.

*A.* Then I want some oranges, a penny a piece, about **fifteen** or a **score**; and half-a-dozen lemons. And ask what would be the price of a **hundred-weight**<sup>2)</sup> of preserving sugar<sup>3)</sup>. I have not decided whether to buy the sugar for the strawberry jam down here<sup>4)</sup> this year or to have it sent from the sugar-refiners in London. We also want a **dozen** boxes of matches. I think that is all at the grocer's. *B.* I shall not be able to carry all those things home. It is quite four **miles**<sup>5)</sup>, for the grocer's is at the other end of the town.

*A.* You had better take the pōny-trap. And go also to the seed-merchant's and buy some seed potatoes; our own are all spoiled (spoilt) this year. *B.* How many shall I get?

*A.* I don't exactly know. One or two **bushels**<sup>6)</sup>, I should think. Tell them we want to **sow** an **acre**<sup>7)</sup> and a half, and they will give you the right quantity. Bring also two or three ounces of cabbage and **half-an-ounce** of lettuce seed.

|                            |                             |                           |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| mēasure Maß; messen        | Materialwarenhändler,       | lēmōn Citrone             |
| weigh (ā) wiegen           | Materialist                 | hundred-weight Zentner    |
| weight (ā) Gewicht         | scale Schale, pl. Schalen,  | refiner Reiniger, Zucker- |
| mārkēt einkaufen (gehen)   | Wage [ben                   | fieder, Raffineur         |
| vēnture wagen              | stick stecken, hängen blei- | trap kleiner Wagen        |
| būtcher Fleischer, Metzger | fifteen eine Mandel         | seed-merchant Samen-      |
| grōcer Kaufmann d. h.      | score 20 Stück              | händler.                  |

2. *B.* Am I to go to any other shop? We want some tacks, do we not? *A.* Yes, buy a **gross** of tin-tacks; and I want a **handful** of larger nails, about an **inch** long. I think they sell them by the **hundred**; if so, a **quarter of a hundred** will be enough.

*B.* They won't sell an **odd** number like that. I shall have to take two or three **dozen**. *A.* Well, two dozen will do. Everything seems to be sold by the dozen now; when I was a girl, we used to buy everything by the **score**: **three-score**, **four-score** or **half-a-**

1) there is something the matter with es fehlt. 2) = Zentner, abgekürzt Cwt; der englische Zentner hat 112 Pfund. 3) d. h. Zucker zum Einmachen (preserve) der Früchte. 4) = hier, in dieser Gegend, im Gegensatz zu London (up to London); ähnlich: die Züge nach London up-trains, die Züge von London in die Provinz down-trains. 5) 1 engl. Meile = 1,61 Kilom. 6) englischer Scheffel, = 8 gallons; 1 gallon (etwa 4 1/2 Liter) = 4 quarts = 8 pints. 7) englischer Acker, oder Morgen, etwa über einen preussischen Morgen, etwa = 2/5 Hektar.



**score.** Then I want you to go to the draper's and get me **half-a-dozen yards**<sup>1)</sup> of **ticking**. It must not be less than four **feet**<sup>2)</sup> wide. You might call at the **baker's** too as you pass, and ask them (they will just be **kneading** the dough) if they will oblige me with a little fresh **leaven**; my last batch of bread did not rise at all well, and I must **bake** again to-morrow. That is all, I believe. Can you remember all these things?

*B.* Yes, I think so. Which way had I better go? By the road over the hills, I suppose. *A.* Why should you go that way? It is farther, and not nearly such a good road.

*B.* It is only a few **perches**<sup>3)</sup> farther; we measured it last summer. And have you not heard that the floods are out<sup>4)</sup>, so that the road by the river is not very safe? They say that more than a **square mile** of meadow-land is under water and that in one place, where those large ponds are, close to the road, the water is two **fathom(s)**<sup>5)</sup> deep. I would rather go by the upper road even though it is a few **steps** farther.

|           |                      |         |                     |        |                     |
|-----------|----------------------|---------|---------------------|--------|---------------------|
| tack      | Stift, fleiner Nagel | draper  | Schnittwarenhändler | knēad  | kneten              |
| gröss     | Groß (12 Dbd.)       | ler     | [Bettüberzügen      | dough  | Teig                |
| a handful | eine Handvoll        | ticking | Zwillig, Zeug zu    | leaven | Sauerteig, Heze     |
| nail      | Nagel                | bake    | backen              | batch  | Gebäck, Schub(Brot) |
| inch      | Zoll                 | baker   | Bäcker              | meadow | (Matte) Wiese.      |

3. *A.* Of course, in that case it will be best. I wish you would also go (in)to the **chēmist's** and bring three **drachms** of camphor; I want to make up<sup>6)</sup> my **cough-medicine** again. *B.* I have very little **bird-seed** left<sup>7)</sup>, for my **canāry**. May I get a **pint**<sup>8)</sup>?

*A.* You may as<sup>9)</sup> well get a **quart**<sup>10)</sup> while you are about it<sup>11)</sup>; you may not be in town again very soon. *B.* You said that next time the pony-cart went to town, you would send the clock to the **watchmaker's** to have it **repäired**. Shall I take it with me to-day?

*A.* Yes. I had quite forgotten that. But now you must be quick and go, or you will not be back before it is dark. You may also buy some sweet-stuff for the children at the **confectioner's**, if you like.

|           |             |             |              |              |               |
|-----------|-------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|
| drachm    | Quentchen   | watch'maker | Uhrmacher    | confectioner | Zuckerbäcker, |
| camphor   | Kampfer     | sweet-stuff | Süßigkeiten, |              | Ronditor.     |
| bird-seed | Vogelfutter |             | Seckereien   |              |               |

1) englische Elle = 3 Fuß, also ziemlich 1 Meter. 2) 1 foot = 12 inches. 3) Meßrute, 1 perch = 5½ yards. 4) = the country is flooded (überflutet). 5) Klafter, 1 fathom = 6 feet. 6) zurecht machen. 7) übrig. 8) etwa ½ Liter. 9) ebenso. 10) etwas über 1 Liter. 11) while you are about buying in that shop.



## Seventy-fourth Lesson.

## Trades.

1. A. Is there any special industry carried on in this town? B. No, we have representatives of almost every **trade**, but not more of one than another, except that there are a good many **belt-makers** and **saddlers**. These supply **manufacturers** in different parts of England with straps for their **machinery**<sup>1)</sup>. Outside the town too, are several yards belonging to **tanners**.

A. I saw, as I came along, a large number of **blacksmiths'** shops. Almost every other house seemed to be a **forge**. B. We have only two regular **farriers** in the town: that is, smiths who do nothing but **shoe horses**.

A. I am sure I saw more than two places where they were working at the **anvil**. B. Very likely; there are three or four **wheelwrights** and a **locksmith**, also a man who calls himself an **armourer** and **gunsmith**.

A. Is not that a **smithy** over the way<sup>2)</sup> with a **horse-shoe** nailed above the door? B. No, that is the shop of a **tinman** and **coppersmith**; the horse-shoe is only put up for luck<sup>3)</sup>.

A. I have not seen either a **joiner's** or **turner's** shop. B. The **turner** lives down that little side street which we have just passed, but I don't know of any **master-carpenter** who has a **workshop** of his own. The large **builders** employ a number of **journey-men carpenters**, **masons**, **glaziers**, **painters**, and all sorts of **mechanics**, who are required in the **building** of a house; they provide them with **tools** and give them almost constant **work**.

|              |                   |               |                     |                   |                      |
|--------------|-------------------|---------------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| trade        | Gewerbe, Handwerk | forge, smithy | Schmiede            | coppersmith       | Kupfer-              |
| industry     | Gewerbe(fleiß)    | regular       | regelmäßig, ordent- |                   |                      |
| carry on     | betreiben         | farrier       | Hufschmied          | [ich join         | verbinden, zusammen- |
| belt         | Gürtel            | shoe          | Schuh; beschuhen,   | joiner            | Tischler             |
| belt-maker   | Gürtler           |               | beschlagen          |                   | [fügen               |
| saddle       | Sattel            | anvil         | Amboß               | turn              | drehen, drehsehn     |
| saddler      | Sattler           | wheel         | Rad                 | turner            | Drehsehn             |
| manūfāc'ture | Fabrik, Fa-       | wright        | Arbeiter, Hand-     | cārpenter         | Zimmermann           |
| manufacturer | Fabrikant         |               | werker, Zimmermann  | wörkshop          | Werksstätte          |
| strap        | Riemen            | wheelwright   | Stellmacher         | builder           | Baumeister           |
| tan          | gerben            | locksmith     | Schlosser           | journey-man       | Geselle              |
| tanner       | Gerber, Lohgerber | armourer      | Waffenschmied       | māson (s = ß)     | Maurer               |
| smith        | Schmied           | gunsmith      | Büchsenmacher       | glā'zier (z = zh) | Glaszer              |
| blacksmith   | Grobschmied,      | horse-shoe    | Hufeisen            | mechanic          | } Handwerker         |
| Hufschmied   |                   | tinman        | Zinngießer, Klemp-  | artisan           |                      |
|              |                   |               |                     | tool              | Werkzeug.            |

1) spr. mashēnery, Maschinen. 2) = on the other side of the road. 3) Nach dem englischen Volksglauben bringt ein Hufeisen Glück und Segen.



2. A. I thought all your Midland and North-country towns were celebrated for some **manufacture** or other; like Lēicester<sup>1)</sup> is for **hosiery** and Wood'stock<sup>2)</sup>, where nearly every man is a **glover**.

B. Many towns have a special industry; for instance, a great quantity of **cutlery** is made in Birmingham, **nails** and **screws** at Dūdley<sup>3)</sup>, and many great **engineers** have their works at Newcastle.

A. And where are the principal **iron foundries**? B. Most of them are in Wales, but wherever there are many **coal-mines** there are also **iron foundries**, because there they have cheap fuel for their **furnaces**. Before the invention of iron-**smelting** with coal, the iron foundries used to be in the midst of forests, side by side with the **charcoal-kilns**. There are also extensive **potteries** in the coal-fields.

A. Many **jewellers** carry on business in Birmingham, do they not? B. Yes, but Birmingham **jewellery** is of a very common description, mostly only gilt brass and sham **diamonds**. The best **goldsmiths**, **lapidaries**, and dealers in **precious stones** are in London.

A. In what part of England are the principal **brewers** and **distillers**? B. **Breweries** are scattered all over the country; almost every large town has one, where the **beer** is **brewed** for local consumption. But we have not very many **stills** in England at all. Most of our **spirit** comes either from Scotland or Ireland or from the Continent.

|                                              |                            |                               |
|----------------------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| mīdland mittelländisch, im Innern des Landes | fōund(e)ry Gießerei        | lāpidary Steinschneider,      |
| hōsiery (spr. hōzhery)                       | fū'el Brennmateriāl        | brēw brauen [Juwelier         |
| Strumpfwirferei                              | furnace Schmelzofen        | brēwer Brauer                 |
| glōver Handschuhmacher                       | smelt schmelzen            | brēwery Brauerei              |
| cūtler Messerschmied                         | chārcoal Holzkohle         | distil(l) destillieren, bren- |
| cūtler Messerschmieds-                       | kiln Brennofen, Darre      | nen, abziehen                 |
| waren, Kurzwaren                             | pōttery Töpferei           | distiller Destillateur,       |
| screw Schraube; schrauben                    | jēweller Juwelier          | Branntweinbrenner             |
| engineer Ingenieur, Ma-                      | gilt vergoldet             | scätter zerstreuen            |
| schinenbauer                                 | brāss Messing              | consūmption Verbrauch,        |
| fōunder Gießer                               | sham falsch, unecht, nach- | still Brennerei [Bedarf       |
|                                              | gemacht                    | spirit Spiritus.              |

3. A. And where do the **manufacturers** of **mūsicāl instrūments** carry on their trade? B. There are some **organ-builders** and **piānoforte makers** in London; but most other instruments, such as **vīolins** etc., are imported from France and Germany.

1) vgl. hierzu Lesson 22. 2) Stadt mit 8000 Einw., nordwestlich von Oxford  
3) mit 46 000 Einw., zwischen Birmingham und Wolverhampton (o = u).



A. Now I want to ask your advice on a rather important matter. I am thinking of having my little book, "English Life and Manners", published in England; I have been told that books of that kind, written by foreigners, sell well here. And perhaps a provincial **printer** would do it cheaper than a London firm. Have you a **publisher** in this town who would undertake the **printing**, do you think? B. Yes, there are Messrs.<sup>1)</sup> Hall & Co.<sup>2)</sup> in the High Street. It is a **bookbinder's** shop, but it is also the **printing-office** of the local paper<sup>3)</sup>.

A. And do you think they would do it well enough? I want it **printed** in clear **type** on good thick paper; and strongly **bound**, either in cloth or with stiff paper **covers**; and I should not like it to be disfigured by the numerous **misprints** which you so often see in books published by second-rate firms. B. They have a very good **compositor**, quite able to set up<sup>4)</sup> the types with no more than the usual number of **errata**<sup>5)</sup>. If you were to call there, you could ask about the **binding**, paper etc. which, I should think, would depend on what you pay.

print drucken  
printer Buchdrucker  
firm Firma  
publisher Verleger  
binder Binder

printing-office Buch-  
druckerei  
type Letter, Buchstabe  
cover }  
binding } Einband  
disfigure entstellen

misprint Druckfehler  
second-rate zweiten Gra-  
des, untergeordnet  
compositor Setzer  
call vorsprechen  
etc. = et cætera u. s. w.

### Seventy-fifth Lesson.

#### Trades. Continuation. (A Sharp Boy.)

1. A. If you please, Sir, have you seen the **knife-grinder** pass this way? Father<sup>6)</sup> sent me after him to have this **hatchet ground**, and I don't know which way he went. B. I think I saw him go round that corner by the **hatter's**. Yes, there he is, in front of the **hair-dresser's** shop. I suppose he is **grinding** the **razors**.

A. I don't think so, Sir, the **barber** sharpens his razors himself. But the knife-grinder goes there every week to be **shaved**. I will wait until he comes out of the shop. B. While you are waiting, can you tell me the way to the **mill**?

A. Do you mean the **wind-mill** or the **water-mill**? B. I don't know. I did not know there were two. I was told that there was

1) Herren, spr. mēshers oder mēsh'yers, nur in Handelsfirmen. 2) Abkürzung für company, Gesellschafter, Teilhaber. 3) Lokalblatt, Zeitung. 4) setzen, gebräuchlicher als compōse. 5) lateinischer Plural von erratum Druckfehler. 6) familiär statt my father.



a fine mill with very large **mill-stones** in this town; and, as I have some corn which I want **ground** into **meal**, I wish to go and see if I can have it done there.

A. Oh, you mean the **flour**<sup>1)</sup>-mill! That is the wind-mill, the water-mill belongs to a **silk-weaver**. B. Well, can you tell me the way?

A. Yes, Sir; go down that street past the **basket-maker's** until you come to a **tailor's** shop; then turn to the left and go straight on till you see a **tallow-chandler's**; you must go right in through a door at the side of his shop, he is also a **soap-boiler** and has a very large yard which you must cross; you then go along a narrow passage between a **dyer's** on one side and a **rope-maker's** on the other (you will see the **dyed** stuffs hanging up to dry); and this passage leads into a field-path which goes straight to the mill and is much nearer than the road. B. And I am to turn in by the side of a tallow-chandler's?

A. Yes, Sir. You will know when you get to the place by the smell of the **tallow**.

|                              |                          |                           |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| sharp [charf, [charf[sinnig, | hair-dresser Friseur     | basket Korb               |
| [chlau                       | razor Rasiermesser       | tailor Schneider          |
| shârpen [charf machen        | barber Barbier           | tallow Talg [her          |
| grînd (grôund, ground)       | shave rasieren           | tallow-chandler Lichtzie- |
| mâhlen, [chleifen            | mill Mühle               | sôap-boiler Seifensieder  |
| grînder [chleifer            | millers Müller           | dye fârben                |
| hâtchet (franz. hache)       | weave weben              | dyer Fârber               |
| Beil, kleine Art             | weaver Weber             | rope Seil                 |
| hatter Gutmacher             | silk-weaver Seidenwirker | dry trocknen.             |

2. B. I dare say I shall find it all right. Do you happen<sup>2)</sup> to know of any bright boy who would like to go into the country as a farm-servant? A. There is a boy who lives next door to us. His father is a **shoemaker**, and Tom has been helping him, but I heard him say the other day that there is not work enough for them both, as there are so many **cobblers** in the town. I believe the **chimney-sweep** offered to take him, but he doesn't like the idea of **sweeping** chimneys. Then I know an orphan boy, who is a **shoe-black** at the railway station, and he would be very glad of a regular place.

B. Are you yourself working with your father? What is his trade? A. He is a **cooper**, Sir, but I am still at school. When I leave, I am to be apprenticed to my uncle, who is a **weaver** and **foreman** at the big mill.

1) über meal und flour vgl. Lesson 35, 2. 2) zufällig; vgl. S. 68, 3 u. N. 147.



*B.* Is that a good trade to learn? *A.* Oh yes! My uncle earns a lot<sup>1)</sup> of money; and he has lately got my eldest sister into the mill<sup>2)</sup>. She used to be a **seamstress**, and I have heard her say that she was paid so little for the **making** of a dress (although she had constantly to get new **cuts**), that she can earn much more by **weaving**. I have another sister who works for a **furrier**; and my eldest brother is an **upholsterer** on his own account.

*B.* Well, here is sixpence for you, I suppose you will be able to spend that at the **pastry-cook's**. If I come to terms<sup>3)</sup> with the **miller**, I shall be in town again next week with my corn; you can let me know then if either of your friends wants my place<sup>4)</sup>. *A.* Thank you, Sir, I will find out by that time.

|                              |                          |                            |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| bright hell, aufgeklärt,     | cooper Küfer, Böttcher   | cut Zuschnitt, Muster      |
| munter                       | appren'tice Lehrling; in | für'rier Kürschner         |
| cobbler Schuhflicker [fehren | die Lehre thun           | upholsterer Tapezierer     |
| sweep (swept, swept) fegen,  | foreman Vormann,         | account Rechnung           |
| chimney-sweep(er) Schorn-    | Werksführer              | pastry Pastete, Torte      |
| steinfeger, Essensehrer      | seamstress Nähterin      | pastry-cook Kuchenbäcker   |
| shoe-black Stiefelpußer      | making Macherlohn        | find out ausfindig machen. |

### Seventy-sixth Lesson.

#### Commerce. (Collecting a Debt.)

1. *A.* Good morning, Sir! I come from Mr. N., the draper, and have called to request **payment** of his account for **goods** which you **purchased** at his **shop** last year. *B.* Oh yes! For the **cloth** and **velvet**. I should have **paid** it sooner, but I think the **book-keeper** has made one or two mistakes in making out<sup>5)</sup> the bill<sup>6)</sup>. For instance, this piece of cloth was **offered** to me as a great **bargain** at 18 shillings<sup>7)</sup> a yard, and it is put down in the bill at a **guinea**<sup>8)</sup>. The velvet also I consider very **dear** for eleven<sup>9)</sup> and sixpence a yard; when I **bought** it, I was told it would only **cost** **ten shillings**.

*A.* I suppose the **clerk**<sup>10)</sup> who **sold** them to you told you the **ready money prices**<sup>11)</sup>; we always give three shillings in the

1) = a great deal. 2) = he has procured employment for her in the mill. 3) = übereinkommen. 4) = wishes to take the situation which I offer. 5) = writing out. 6) bill die ausgeschriebene Rechnung, account die noch im Buche stehende. 7) abgefürzt s.; ein englischer shilling = 1 Mark. 8) spr. g'n'ī, eine nicht mehr geprägte Goldmünze, = 21 s., nach der noch manche Honorare, z. B. die der Ärzte und Lehrer, bemessen werden. 9) zu ergänzen shillings. penny englischer Pfennig, pl. pennies Pfennigstücke, pence Wertangabe; abgefürzt d. d. h. denarius, lat. Pfennig. 10) e = â, hier Handlungsdiener, Kommiss, vgl. S. 27, 5. 11) die Preise bei sofortiger Bezahlung.



pound<sup>1)</sup> **discount** for **cash**. *B.* Do you mean to say that you increase your account by one sixth, if your **customers** do not immediately hand you the **money** over the **counter**?

*A.* No, Sir; but we do, if they take more than three months' **crédit**. If we did not, we should lose all the **interest** on our money, as the **wholesale traders** expect the **retailers** to pay them within a few weeks of the **receipt** of the **goods**. *B.* But 3 shillings in the pound is **15 per<sup>2)</sup> cent**; rather a high rate of interest, I think

|                             |                           |                             |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| cōmmerce Handel             | book'-keeper Buchhalter   | cūstomer (der) Kunde, Kund- |
| collēct einsammeln, ein-    | bârgain (guter, billiger) | hand einhändigen [schaft    |
| fordern                     | Handel                    | cōunter Ladentisch          |
| debt (Geld-)Schuld          | put down } anrechnen      | whōlesale trāder Groß-      |
| dēbtor Schuldner [um        | reckon                    | händler                     |
| requēst ersuchen um, bitten | rēady mōney } bareß       | retāiler Detailhändler      |
| pāyment Bezahlung           | cāsh } Geld               | recēipt Empfang, Quittung;  |
| pūrchase (s=ß) einfau-      | discoūnt Rabatt, Abzug    | quittieren                  |
| fen; Kauf                   |                           | rate Rate, Satz.            |

2. *A.* Our sýstem of giving credit entails a great many losses; very often we lose our money altogether through the **debtor** becoming **bankrupt**, when his **creditors** only **receive** a few shillings for every pound of the original **debt**. *B.* Well, I suppose I must pay it, but I certainly ought to have been informed of this arrangement when I made the **purchases**.

*A.* I regret very much that you were not. I will lay the matter before my **prīncipal** and see whether he can return you a portion of the **discount**. *B.* Very well. Can you **change** me a **ten pound note<sup>3)</sup>**, or shall I write you a **chēque<sup>4)</sup>** for the amount?

*A.* I am not sure that I have **change** enough. Yes, I think I have. Here are four **sōvereigns<sup>5)</sup>** and a half, and six shillings. Will you be so good as to count it and see if it is correct. *B.* Yes, that is quite right; the amount of the bill is £<sup>6)</sup> 5. 4. 0.

*A.* If you will kindly give me a pen and ink, I will **receipt** it. — Thank you, Sir, good morning! I am much obliged to you.

|                         |                                |           |                |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------|----------------|
| entāil im Gefolge haben | crēditor Gläubiger             | [Meingeld | amōunt Betrag. |
| bānkrupt banferott      | change wechseln; kleines Geld, |           |                |

1) 1 pound hat 20 s. 2) pro. 3) 10-Pfundschein; das niedrigste Papiergeld ist eine 5 pound note. 4) oder check Bankanweisung. 5) d. h. 4 Goldstücke à 20 s. 6) Abkürzung für pound sterling (sterling echt, richtig, nach dem gesetzlichen Zinsfuß; Abkürzung von ēasterling ein aus dem Osten Kommender, weil die deutschen Kaufleute im Mittelalter das beste Geld hatten). 1 £ hat also 20 s., 1 s. = 12 d., 1 d. = 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>3</sub> deutschen M. Es giebt noch verschiedene Arten von Pfennigstücken, z. B. Sechspennigstücke sixpenny pieces, <sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> d. = hālf penny (aber hālf a penny), <sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub> d. = fārthing. Für two pence spricht man tüppence.



## Seventy-seventh Lesson.

## Continuation. (A Successful Trader.)

1. A. Halloo! I did not know you lived in this part of the country. What brings<sup>1)</sup> you here? B. I am in the **counting-house** of one of the largest **merchants**<sup>2)</sup> in this town.

A. Indeed! And is that an improvement on the **trade** to which you were **apprenticed**? B. Oh yes! A great improvement. Besides, when my **apprenticeship** was out<sup>3)</sup>, I could not get any work at all; so that I thought myself very fortunate to be offered this situation by an old friend of my father's.

A. Have you a good salary? B. Very good now; at first it was small, and I had nothing to do all day but to copy **invoices**. But now I am **cashier** and very well off indeed.

A. I am heartily glad to hear it. You must have given great satisfaction to be put so soon into such a place of trust. B. Well, my principal is, as I said, an old friend. He has himself risen to a position of great wealth in a most extraordinary manner. He began life as a **pedlar**, carrying his **merchandise** round the country. He went to all the **fairs** and **markets** and **haggled** for odd pieces of all kinds of **stuffs: silk, muslin, and cotton**. These he sold **cheap** and yet with a fair **profit** to the farmers' wives who lived too far in the country to be able to go themselves to a **linen draper's** shop. He also had quite a large stock of **fancy goods** and **stationery**. After a while, when he had **saved** a little money, he made arrangements with the **publishers** of some popular books and added a kind of **circulating library** to his other **business**.

|                                       |                  |                              |                           |
|---------------------------------------|------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| trader }<br>dealer }                  | Handeltreibender | cashier Kassierer            | farmer Bauer, Landmann    |
| halloo halloh                         |                  | to be well off in guten Ver- | fancy goods Modewaren     |
| counting-house }<br>counting-office } | Comp-<br>toir    | hältnissen sich befinden     | stationery Schreibmate-   |
| improvement                           | Verbesserung     | place of trust Vertrauens-   | rialwaren(handlung)       |
| apprenticeship                        | Lehrzeit         | pedlar Hausierer [posten     | circulate zirkulieren, im |
| salary                                | Lohn, Gehalt     | merchandise (Raufmanns=)     | Umlauf sein               |
| invoice                               | Factura          | fair Jahrmarkt, Messe [Ware  | library Bibliothek        |
|                                       |                  | haggle } handeln,            | circulating library Leih- |
|                                       |                  | higgle } feilschen           | bibliothek.               |

2. A. A circulating library! Do you mean that he set up a **book-seller's shop**? B. No, he carried a few books round in his basket and left them here and there for his **customers** to read; and when he went the same round again a few weeks later, he exchanged them for others.

1) führt. 2) Kaufmann, d. h. Großhändler; der Kleinhändler ist tradesman, oder shopkeeper v. dgl. 3) = over.



A. That was a cāpital idē'a; was it successful? B. Yes, it succeeded so well that, by exercising the strictest ecōnomy, he soon had quite a large sum in the **savings-bank**. After a few years **he took a grocer's business** in this town, paying for it entirely out of his own **savings**.

A. That is certainly a wonderful story of successful **trafficking** with small sums. I suppose his profits were often only in **farthings** or **hālfpence**. B. He has gone on in the same way ever since: always carefully keeping his **expenditure** well within<sup>1)</sup> his **income**. He soon began to supply the small shops in all the villages round and, about ten years ago, retired from the **retail trade** altogether. He is now a **wholesale dealer** in colōnial produce and also the chief **banker** in the town. His credit is so good, that his **bills of exchange** are considered as good as ready money.

A. Well, I hope I shall hear some day that he has taken you into **partnership**. B. To become a **partner** in the **business** by-and-by, is the height of my ambition; but I do not know whether it will ever be rē'alized.

|              |                 |              |             |                  |                   |
|--------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------------------|-------------------|
| book'seller  | Buchhändler     | expenditure  | Ausgabe     | bill of exchange | Wechsel           |
| round        | Runde, Rundgang | in'come      | Einkommen,  | pârtner          | Teilhaber         |
| exchānge     | auswechseln     |              | Einkünfte   | pârtnership      | Genossen-         |
| sāving(s)    | Ersparnis       | retāil trade | Kleinhandel |                  | schaft, Compagnie |
| sāvings-bank | Sparfasse       | prōduce      | Produkt(e)  | by-and-by        | nach und nach,    |
| trāffic(k)   | Handel treiben  | bānker       | Banquier    |                  | später.           |

### Seventy-eighth Lesson.

#### Farming<sup>2)</sup>.

1. A. So you have turned<sup>3)</sup> **farmer** since I last saw you. Do you like the life<sup>4)</sup>? B. I like it pretty well, though I have very hard work.

A. Hard work! Why, you only have to look after<sup>5)</sup> things. You don't **till the ground** yourself, do you? B. It is just the looking after things that is the most trouble. I had much rather follow the **plough**, or handle the **sickle** or the **scythe**.

A. But at least during the winter months you are able to take a good rest, are you not? B. There is more work with the animals in winter than in summer: to see<sup>6)</sup> that they are provided with sūitable fodder<sup>7)</sup>, and that their stables are warm and dry. And in autumn, almost as soon as the last **sheaves** of corn are safely in the **barn**, we begin to **plough** over the **stubble fields**, so that all

1) = less than. 2) vgl. hierzu Lesson 62. 3) = become. 4) = the mode of living. 5) = sūperintēnd' beaufsichtigen, vorstehen. 6) = I have to see. 7) Viehfutter, wie Heu, Stroh u. dgl.; food Nahrung für Menschen und Tiere.



the land that is to be **sown** in spring is turned over, before the heavy frosts come and render the **soil**<sup>1)</sup> too hard to be worked. I have to be constantly on the spot while the **ploughing** is going on, or else the **ploughmen** would not make the **furrows** deep enough.

A. And then, I suppose, it is almost time to **sow** some of the seeds. B. We get a little rest during the frost and snow, but very early in the spring the fields have to be **manured** and the seeds put in for the early **crops**. Then we have to prepare the **meadows** that are to be set apart for **hay**. And from the time the hay is **mown** until the **harvest** is over, the **corn** all **thrashed** and the **straw stacked**, there is a constant pressure of work.

|                          |                       |                               |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| farm Bauerngut, Pachtgut | scythe Sense          | apart beiseite, abge sondert, |
| farmer Bauer, Pächter    | stable Stall          | besonders [prügeln            |
| farming Landwirtschaft   | sheaf Garbe           | thrash dreschen, durch=       |
| till bestellen           | barn Scheuer, Scheune | stack aufstapeln, aufschö=    |
| plough Pflug; pflügen    | stubble Stoppel       | bern, in Haufen zu=           |
| ploughman Ackerknecht    | furrow Furche         | sammenstellen [drang.         |
| sickle Sichel            | manure düngen; Dünger | pressure Gedränge, An=        |

2. A. Do you still thrash the corn by hand, with the **flail**? B. No, I use a **thrashing-machine**. But I employ **reapers** to cut the corn, because I think the reaping-machines<sup>2)</sup> waste the grain.

A. And do you find that **farming** pays well<sup>3)</sup>? B. Fairly well, when the seasons are favourable; but as I am only a **tenant-farmer** and have a heavy<sup>4)</sup> rent to pay, I am not likely to make a fortune by **agriculture**.

A. You have a very large **farm**, I suppose. B. Yes; and, besides the farm itself, I have a large tract of hilly moorland on the other side of my landlord's **estate** where I feed<sup>5)</sup> my sheep and cows; and I have to go up there every few days to see that the **shepherds** and **herdsmen** take proper care of the cattle.

A. I did not know you kept so many animals. B. Oh yes. I have a large **flock**<sup>6)</sup> of **sheep** and several **herds** of **cows**.

A. You must employ a large number of men. B. Yes, and it is sometimes very difficult to get labourers<sup>7)</sup>, as many of the young **peasants**<sup>8)</sup> go up to London, thinking they will get higher wages there.

1) Ackerboden; floor Fußboden, attic Dachboden; böttom die unterste Fläche eines Gegenstandes, z. B. eines Korbes; ground das allgemeine Wort für „Boden“. 2) spr. mashēn, Mähmaschine. 3) sich gut bezahlt macht, etwas einbringt. 4) = high. 5) = send my sheep to feed on the grass. 6) vgl. Lesson 30, 2. 7) Arbeiter, bei dessen Arbeit wenig Geschicklichkeit erfordert wird, Tagelöhner; wörkman Arbeiter, dessen Arbeit viel Geschick erfordert, Handwerker. 8) Bauer, im Gegensatz zum Stadtbewohner (townsman); dann jeder ärmliche Bauer, Landarbeiter, Bauernknecht; farmer der wohlhabende Bauer oder Gutspächter, der praktische Landwirt.



flail Flegel  
reaper Schnitter  
waste verwüsten, verderben  
tenant Pächter

rent Pacht  
agriculture Ackerbau  
tract Strich (Land)

moorland Moorboden  
shepherd Schäfer  
herdsman Viehhirt  
wages Lohn.

### Seventy-ninth Lesson.

#### Gardening and Hunting.

1. *A.* I hear that you have been devoting your attention to **horticulture** lately. Is it true that you spend all your spare time **spade** or **watering-pot** in hand<sup>1)</sup>? *B.* Yes, it is quite true. I am always either **digging** in the **kitchen-garden**, or weeding the **flower-beds**, or pruning the fruit-trees in the **orchard**. I wish you would come some day and see the result of my gardening.

*A.* But you don't mean to say that you keep all that large **garden** in order by yourself. *B.* No, I keep a **gardener**. But he has enough to do in keeping the **garden-walks** and the **avenue**, which leads to the house, tidily weeded; in cutting and rolling the grass on the **lawns**, so that the **turf** may be always smooth and green; and in repairing the **hedges** and **fences** which divide my garden from the road and from the adjoining **wood**. So I do most of the work in the **hot-houses** myself, **watering** all the plants every morning before breakfast. I also **plant** all the flowers myself and keep the beds weeded, because I am afraid, if I were to trust the man to come near my flowers with a **hoe** or a **rake**, he might **rake over** some of my choicest plants. I have a pretty little **ârbour**<sup>2)</sup> too, over which I have myself trained two fine rose-trees.

*A.* Ah! I think there is no prettier covering for a summer-house than climbing roses. I must certainly come and see your garden while they are in bloom.

gârdening } Gartenbau  
horticulture }  
hunt jagen  
kitchen-garden Gemüse-  
weed jäten [garten  
prune verschneiden, aus-  
schneiden, auspußen  
orchard Obstgarten  
tidy rein, sauber

röll rollen, walzen  
lawn }  
green } Rasenplatz  
grass-plot }  
turf Torf, Rasen  
smooth glatt  
hedge Hecke  
fence Zaun  
hot-house Treibhaus

green-house (kaltes) Ge-  
wächshaus  
water begießen  
hoe Hacke, Harst  
rake Rechen, Harke; re-  
chen, harfen  
choice ausgewählt, aus-  
erlesen  
train ziehen.

2. *A.* Is there much **hunting** in your country? *B.* Yes, there

1) mit dem Spaten oder der Gießkanne in der Hand; schildernder Akkusativ!

2) eine Laube aus Latten oder Brettern; bower eine Laube, von Zweigen und Blätterwerk gebildet.



is a good deal of **game** in the neighbourhood, and I am often annoyed by the continual **shooting**. I never go (a) hunting<sup>1)</sup> myself; but keep my own little strip of wood only for its beauty and for the fire-wood with which it supplies us; but in the forests all around, at certain seasons of the year, we hear **shots** being fired and the shouts of the **hunters** from morning till night. And they used to claim the right to follow the **chase** through my private woods and even through my garden, until I had a very high fence put up, over which the horses could not leap.

A. I suppose there is some **poaching**, too, now and then. B. Yes, my neighbours and their game-keepers are constantly having nightly frays with **poachers** and **fowlers**. Another nuisance is the number of tourists from London, who are attracted by the **fishing**. The right to **fish** in the river is attached to both the inns in the village; and so they are full of guests all the summer.

A. Well, that makes the place a little more lively, does it not? B. A great deal too lively for my taste. On a fine day in August, our pretty river is quite disfigured by these cöckney<sup>2)</sup> **fishermen** with their **rods** and **lines**.

|                         |                             |                         |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| game Wild               | poach wildern, Wildddie-    | nūisance Übelstand, Be- |
| annoy ärgern            | berei treiben               | fish fischen [lästigung |
| strip Streifen, Stück   | pōacher Wildddieb           | fishing Fischfang       |
| fire-wood Brennholz     | gāme-keeper Wildhüter       | fisherman Fischer       |
| shout Schreien, Rufen   | fray Streit, Kampf, Gefecht | rod Angelrute           |
| chase (s=ß) Jagd; jagen | fowler Vogelfänger          | line Angelschnur.       |

### Eightieth Lesson.

#### Various Ab'stract Notions. (A Wise Old Man.)

1. A. What have you been doing this afternoon? B. I went to the shoe-maker's about a pair of boots which I want to have made. He was out, but I stayed for more than an hour **listening** to his old father's **recollections** of his youth.

A. What, the cobbler! He must be very old. B. So he is; but he is a wonderful old man. He **retains** the full use of all his **five senses**, and his conversation shows a great deal of **good-sense**, **knowledge** of the world, and **wisdom**.

A. But surely his **memory** is impaired. B. He **remembers** perfectly everything that happened when he was a young man, but

1) auf die Jagd gehen; vgl. hierüber S. 73, 2d. 2) Spitzname der Londoner mit dem Begriff der Verweichlichung, entweder vom altenglischen cockenai Hähnchen, oder von cockle-egg (cockle der junge Hahn).



there is no **doubt** he sometimes **forgets** or is **uncertain** about things that happened a few months ago.

A. I have heard that he is held in high **esteem**, and that half the young people in the town ask his **opinion** when they are in **doubt** or **trouble**; and rely on his **judgment** as though **they thought** that he could not possibly **be wrong**. B. And indeed he is **almost always right**. He **consoles** every one who is in **sorrow**; there is scarcely any **care** or **affliction** for which he has not some words of **comfort**; and he can often see reason **to hope** when any one else would **despair**. Then you would be **surprised** to see with how much **skill** he finds out when it is a person's own **folly**, **awkwardness** or **ignorance** that has caused **disappointment** in a friend, or **disagreeableness** between neighbours. His advice is not always **agreeable**; on the contrary, it is often very **unpleasant**; but it is always **wise**.

|                |                                     |             |                            |                  |                       |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| nōtion         | Begriff                             | impair      | verschlechtern             | ig'norance       | Unwissenheit          |
| good-sense     | } gesunder<br>Menschen-<br>verstand | sorrow      | Sorge, Kummer              | ig'norant        | unwissend             |
| (fr. bon sens) |                                     | affliction  | Betrübnis                  | disappointmēt    | Täu-<br>schung        |
| common-sense   |                                     | comfort     | Trost                      | agreeable        | angenehm              |
| knōwledge      | Kenntnis,                           | despair     | verzweifeln                | disagreeableness | Unan-<br>nehmlichkeit |
| —nisse         |                                     | awkward     | ungeschickt, ver-<br>fehrt | unpleasant       | unangenehm.           |
| wisdom (s=z)   | Weisheit                            | awkwardness | Ungeschick,                |                  |                       |
| mēmory         | Gedächtnis                          |             |                            |                  |                       |

2. A. I should think, then, that it is not often followed. B. I am not so sure of that. He has such a **serious wish** to do good, so much **tenderness** for the **feelings** of others and such **hatred** and **contempt** for anything like **meanness** or **untruth**, that any man who is not an absolute **fool** must be the better for having **enjoyed** his **friendship**. And many a young fellow has left him with the **resolution** to be more **contented** with his lot in life, to forego the **gratification** of some **silly** revenge, and not to **despise** others merely on account of their **stupidity** or **dulness**.

A. But does he not sometimes **fly into a passion**<sup>1)</sup> himself? B. Yes, I **once** saw him give way to **vexation**. He has a great **aversion** to practical **jokes**, and one evening a **stupid** boy dressed himself up as a ghost to frighten his little grand-daughter, who ran to him in great **fear** and **horror**<sup>2)</sup>. When he saw the cause of the child's **terror**, he worked himself up into a perfect **fury**<sup>3)</sup> and, in spite of his great<sup>4)</sup> age, gave the lad a sound thrashing.

1) in Zorn geraten. 2) Schrecken, stärker als terror. 3) Wut, stärker als rage. 4) hoch.



A. I don't **admire** him any the less for that. B. I think he **regretted** his **passion** afterwards, when he had time to **calm** down, for he is usually the most **tranquil** of men and must have been beside himself with **rage**.

|                              |                                |                |                              |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------|------------------------------|
| tender zart                  | [Zartgefühl                    | stupid } dumm  | practical joke handgreif-    |
| tenderness                   | Bärtlichkeit,                  | dull }         | licher, plumper Spaß,        |
| contempt Verachtung          | stupidity }                    | dummer Streich |                              |
| foregō aufgeben, Verzicht    | dul(l)ness }                   | Dummheit       | dress up aufputzen           |
| gratify befriedigen [leisten | vex ärgeren                    |                | frighten erschrecken         |
| gratification Befriedigung,  | vexation Ärger, Verdruß        |                | work up erregen, erhitzen    |
| silly thöricht               | [Genuß aversion (to) Abneigung |                | calm (down) (sich) beruhigen |
| despise verachten            | (gegen)                        |                | tranquil ruhig. [gen         |

3. A. Has he only that one grand-child? B. Oh no! There is a large family of them; and all the neighbours' children **love** him dearly, for he is always **glad** to take any amount of **trouble** to give them **pleasure**, always ready to **laugh** at their little **jests**<sup>1)</sup> and to be **merry** along with them; indeed, the more fun and **laughter** he hears about him, the more **joyful** he seems to be.

A. I **think** you must introduce me to this wonderful old friend of yours; will you take me with you next time you go to see him? B. Yes, I am sure you will like him; he is **talkative**, but has too fine an **intellect** ever to be **tedious**. To-day he was a little **concerned** and **uneasy**, because he has not heard from his youngest son, a sailor; and I promised to look in<sup>2)</sup> again to-morrow, to see whether the letter for which he is **waiting** in such **anxious expectation**, has arrived. I hope he will hear of him soon, for it would be a **sad** thing if he were to have another great **grief**<sup>3)</sup> in his old age.

|                            |                          |                          |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| laugh (f) lachen           | introduce vorstellen     | tedious langweilig       |
| laughter Lachen, Gelächter | talkative gesprächig     | concerned betroffen, be- |
| merry lustig               | intellect Verstand, Ver- | uneasy unruhig [trübt    |
| fun Spaß                   | ständniß                 | old age Greisenalter.    |

### Eighty-first Lesson.

#### A Visit to<sup>4)</sup> London<sup>5)</sup>.

1. A. I hear you want to go up<sup>6)</sup> to London. B. Yes, Sir, so I do.

A. Were you ever in London before? B. No, Sir, never; what I know of London, I know only from books and by hear-say.

A. Now let me hear what you know; first, how large is it?

1) Scherz meist auf Kosten anderer; joke harmloser Scherz. 2) = to call in a house hineingehen, vorsprechen. 3) Sorge, Kummer; schwächer als affliction, aber stärker als sorrow. 4) in. 5) Vgl. hierzu die Karte von L. 6) vgl. S. 65, 4.



*B.* It is the largest city in the world, for it has more than 5 millions of inhabitants.

*A.* Into how many **principal parts** is it divided? *B.* Into three: the City, Westminster (on the northern bank of the river Thames), and Southwark<sup>1)</sup> with Lambeth (on the southern bank), with their respective suburbs.

*A.* What are the **principal public buildings**? *B.* St. Paul's (Cathedral), Westminster Abbey, the Houses<sup>2)</sup> of Parliament, Buckingham Palace, St. James's (Palace), the Tower<sup>3)</sup>, the British Museum, the Mansion House (the official residence of the Lord Mayor), and the Guildhall (the townhall of the City).

*A.* What is the Tower? *B.* It has been a palace, a prison, a place of execution, and a fortress; it is now simply an armoury and jewel room, where the regal symbols, such as crowns, sceptres and so on, are kept.

hear-say Hörensagen                      execution Hinrichtung                      regal königlich.  
respective bezüglich, betreffend      armoury Zeughaus, Waffensammlung

2. *A.* What are the **principal bridges** over the Thames? *B.* London Bridge, Blackfriars Br., Waterloo Br., Charing Cross<sup>4)</sup> Br., and Westminster Br.

*A.* What are the **principal markets**? *B.* Covent<sup>5)</sup> Garden for fruit, vegetables, and flowers (in the western part), the Metropolitan Market for cattle (in the northern part), Smithfield M., formerly for cattle, now for meat and poultry (in the eastern part or at least in the City), and the South London M. for general use.

*A.* What are the **principal squares**? *B.* Trafalgar Square with several statues, the most important being Nelson's Monument, Grosvenor, Cavendish, Portman, St. James's, Hanover, Bedford, Russell, Bloomsbury, Euston (all in the western or central part), Finsbury (in the East).

*A.* What are the **principal parks**? *B.* Hyde Park with Kensington<sup>6)</sup> Gardens, the Green Park, and St. James's Park (in the West), Regent's Park with the Botanical and Zoological Gardens in the North-West, Victoria Park in the North-East, Battersea Park in the South-West.  
black'friar Dominikaner(=mönch)      metropolitan hauptstädtisch, Hauptstadt's.

1) früher sütherk gespr. 2) Der Plural, weil das Gebäude (the Palace of Westminster) zwei Häuser, das Haus der Lords und das Haus der Gemeinen, enthält. 3) früher ein berühmtes Staatsgefängnis, jetzt Zeughaus. 4) von einem ehemaligen Kreuz so genannt, das in der Nähe stand und von Eduard I. seiner verstorbenen Gemahlin, der chère reine, geweiht wurde. 5) entstanden aus convent Kloster, da es ursprünglich ein Klostergarten war. 6) spr. s = z.



3. A. What are the **principal streets**? B. The direction of the main streets is p̄arallel to the left bank of the river Thames from West to East. There are two lines, a northern and a southern one; to the first (former) belong the following streets: Oxford Street, Hōlborn, Nēwgate Street, Chēapside, Whītechāpel, and Mile End Road; to the latter: Piccadilly<sup>1)</sup>, Pall Mall<sup>2)</sup>, Chāring Cross, the Strand, Fleet Street, Lūdgate Hill, St. Paul's Chūrchyard, Cānnon Street, and Tower Street.

A. What are the **principal thē'atres**? B. Her Mājesty's Theatre or Itālian Op'era House, Drūry Lane, the Hāymarket<sup>3)</sup>, the Lȳcē'um, Princess's, Olȳmpic, Gāi'ety, Globe, and several others.

A. Well, I must say that you are already well acquāinted with the localities of London.

poultry Geflügel      locality Örtlichkeit.

4. **Inquīring (after) one's way**<sup>4)</sup>. A. Can you direct me to Rūssell Square? B. Yes, Sir, but you are still a long way from it. You must continue for a quarter of a mile in a straight line, and then turn to the left and inquire again. By-the-bye, let me recommend you always to ask a policeman your way. They can tell you correctly, because they are well acquainted with the neigh'bourhood, and they are sure<sup>5)</sup> not to misdirect you, which some people might be ill-natured enough to do.

A. Thank you, Sir, I am very much obliged to you for your information, for I am a stranger, and have very little acquaintance with London. B. Indeed, then, Sir, I should advise you not to try to find Russell Square yourself, for the way is both long and intricate. You had better take a cab and drive to your destination.

inquire sich erkundigen, fragen    misdirect falsch berichten,    advice Rat    [schwierig  
by-the-by(e) nebenbei, beiläufig    irre leiten    intricate verwickelt,  
fig, was ich eben sagen wollte    ill'-natured böshaft    destination Bestimmung(ort).  
recommēd empfehlen    advise raten

5. A. I shall act upon your advice<sup>6)</sup>, but how shall I obtain a cab? B. There is a stand at the end of this street, but I see a Hānsom<sup>7)</sup> coming this way now, and I think it is empty. Hallo,

1) Diminutiv von pica = pike (Piefe, Spitze), eine Art Spitzen, von denen eine Niederlage zur Zeit der Königin Elisabeth in dieser Straße war. 2) spr. pelmēl, von einem französischen Ballspiel, das einst an dieser Stelle gespielt wurde, so genannt; auch pail-mail und pell-mell geschrieben, franz. mail Hammer. 3) auf dem frühern „Heumarkt“. 4) Nach Waddy, the English Echo, Seite 35. 5) they are sure sicherlich; vgl. L. 68, 3 und N. 147. 6) Beachte die Orthographie vom Zeitwort advise und dem Substantiv advice. 7) eine nach dem Erfinder benannte zweirädrige Droschke mit einem erhöhten Rutscherfise hinten.



cab<sup>1)</sup>, are you disengaged? *Cabman.* Yes, Sir. *B.* Drive this gentleman to Russell Square; good morning, Sir! *A.* Good morning. I apologize for the trouble I have caused you, and thank you for your courtesy. *Cabman.* This is Russell Square. What number do you want, Sir? *A.* Nō.<sup>2)</sup> 45, Mr. Gordon's. You will see his name on the door, I believe. What is the fare? *Cabman.* Eighteen pence. *A.* Is Mr. Gordon (with)in? *Servant.* Yes, Sir, what name shall I announce (say)? *A.* Give him that card, if you please. *Servant.* Will you be good enough to take a seat, Sir; my m<sup>a</sup>ster will be down in a m<sup>i</sup>nute or two.

|       |             |        |                    |           |                  |             |
|-------|-------------|--------|--------------------|-----------|------------------|-------------|
| stand | Stand(ort), | Halte- | disengaged         | frei      | courtesy (s = ß) | Artigkeit,  |
|       | platz       |        | apologize (for)    | sich ent- |                  | Höflichkeit |
| empty | leer        |        | schuldigen (wegen) |           | a— or two        | ein paar.   |

### Eighty-second Lesson.

Continuation. **The first Excursion in London, on an Omnibus<sup>3)</sup>.**

*A.* Do you know most of the streets we are going through?  
*B.* Yes, Sir, I think so.

*A.* I know what this is. **Waterloo Bridge.** *B.* Yes, you are right. I have heard that the view from here is the finest in any city in Europe.

*A.* What is that very big building there with the high tower?  
*B.* That's the **Houses of P<sup>a</sup>rlia<sup>m</sup>ent**, and those large new buildings are hotels and clubs, I think.

*A.* And this big one with the dirty front just to the right here?  
*B.* That is **S<sup>o</sup>mers<sup>e</sup>t House<sup>4)</sup>**; a little way farther on is the **Temple<sup>5)</sup>**, and then last of all you see the dome of **St. Paul's Cath<sup>e</sup>dral**.

*A.* I should like to go there some day. *B.* I've no doubt you will; I've been twice.

*A.* What is this street? *B.* This is the **Strand**.

*A.* What a lot of omnibuses and cabs there are here, and so many people walking, too! *B.* Yes, the Strand is very crowded.

*A.* Is that a Railway station? *B.* Yes, **Ch<sup>a</sup>ring Cross** station, and this is **Trafalgar Square**. Look at the stone lions<sup>6)</sup>!

*A.* Are real lions as big as that? *B.* Not quite, I think. That

1) statt cäbman Droschkenfutscher. 2) = numero = number. 3) Nach Shindler, Echo of the spoken English, S. 22. 4) Ein Regierungsgebäude für verschiedene Behörden, an Stelle des alten Palastes Somers<sup>e</sup>t. 5) früher den Tempelherren gehörig, dient er jetzt juristischen Zwecken; vgl. Seite 50, 1. 6) am Fuße der Nelson-Säule, 4 an der Zahl.



is **Nelson's Cöolumn**, and that is Nelson's stätue on the top of it. That's the **Nätional Gällery** over there.

A. What's that for? B. Oh, that is full of pictures, some of them are very pretty (fine).

A. I wish this bus<sup>1)</sup> would move on. We've<sup>2)</sup> been stopping here a long while.

dirty schmutzig cöolumn Säule.

2. A. What is the name of this street? B. **Waterloo Place**.

A. That's three Waterloos already, the station, the bridge, and now Waterloo Place. B. That is no wonder, for there are thirty King Streets in London and a lot of Queen Streets, too.

A. Where are we now? B. This is **Piccadilly Circus**, that is **Piccadilly**; we go up **Rēgent Street**<sup>3)</sup>.

A. What nice shops there are in this street! What are all those people looking in that window for? B. At the phōtographs<sup>4)</sup>, I suppose; there is almost always a little crowd in front of that shop.

A. See, there is a window full of toys. I should like to go in there and buy something, wouldn't<sup>5)</sup> you? B. Yes, they have all sorts of things there, for grown-up people too.

A. What a lot of people there are in this street! B. Yes, it is **Oxford Street** we are crossing here.

A. Isn't that a silly looking church? B. Yes, perhaps they thought it pretty when it was new.

A. What is that funny round house? B. That must be a station on the **Underground Railway**<sup>6)</sup>. The railway goes beneath the street, you know.

A. A friend is calling to us to come down. B. You go first, and take care you don't fall.

toy (Tand) Spielzeug silly thöricht funny spaßhaft underground unterirdisch.

### Eighty-third Lesson.

#### Continuation. Cövent Garden<sup>7)</sup>.

1. A. This is Covent Garden Market. B. I should have guessed it from the enormous quantity of vëgetables which I see in every direction. A. We are now in the region of flowers and fruits. This

1) Abfürzung für omnibus. 2) Abfürzung, statt we have, vgl. Lehrgang und Leitfaden II, Anhang V. 3) Eine prächtige Verbindungsstraße zwischen Piccadilly und Oxford Street. 4) Photographie, abgefürzt phōto; dafür auch likeness, z. B. I have had my likeness taken ich habe mich photographieren lassen. 5) Abfürzung, statt would not. 6) London hat ein vollständiges unterirdisches Eisenbahnnetz. 7) Nach Waddy, S. 85, vgl. hierzu Lesson 34 und 35.



is the booth where my wife selects (makes) her purchases. I want some fruit for to-night, Mr. Smith. *Mr. Sm.* Will you walk in, Sir? *A.* I can see from outside what you have. You always make as good a show as possible at the window. You may send me two pounds of grapes, that large pine-apple, a basket of strawberries, a dozen (of) apricots and a dozen (of) peaches. *Mr. Sm.* Will you not take some oranges, Sir? *A.* If you have very good ones. *Mr. Sm.* When Mrs. A.<sup>1)</sup> was here last, she wanted some truffles, and I promised to let her know when I received any fresh ones. I have got very sweet ones now. *A.* You can send them up then.

guëss erraten

booth Bude

shōw Schau, Schein.

2. *Mr. Sm.* I shall want you to have a look at the greenhouse. *A.* I want the best hēliotrope you can find, and two or three lady's-slippers, calceolārias, I think, you call them. *Mr. Sm.* I will come to-morrow, Sir. *A.* Do so; send those things directly, as they are wanting some of them now. You may add some vegetables, turnips, carrots, and broccoli; for though they did not commission me to order them, I think they will most likely need them. *Mr. Sm.* I will send them on approval. If Mrs. A. has no need of them, my messenger can bring them back again.

lādy's-slipper }  
calcēōlā'ria }  
brōccoli Spargelfohl

Pantoffelblume

commission beauftragen  
approval Beifall, Ge-  
nehmigung; on— auf

den Fall hin, daß  
sie recht sind, zur  
Ansicht.

### Eighty-fourth Lesson.

#### Continuation. A Visit to Westminster Abbey.

1. *A.* I am quite at your service to-day. Where would you like to go first? *B.* I had better leave that to you, as you are to be my guide to some of the places best worth seeing in or near London.

*A.* Well then, I should suggest<sup>2)</sup> that we go to **Westminster Abbey** this morning and to the **British Musēum** in the afternoon. *B.* Is this the **Abbey**? We have not had (did not have) far to come! Some parts of it look very old indeed!

*A.* It was founded more than 12 hundred years ago; but most of the church that we now see was built in the 13<sup>th</sup> century<sup>3)</sup>. *B.* It does not seem so large inside as I expected!

1) Nur vertrauten Freunden gegenüber sagt der Engländer, wenn er von seiner Frau spricht, my wife, sonst Mrs. N.; folglich kann der obige Geschäftsmann nicht sagen: your wife. 2) bescheiden vorschlagen, spr. sug-jest oder sud-jest. 3) von Heinrich III. (1216—1272).



A. We scarcely see half the church from here. That heavy **screen**, with the **organ** over it, divides it across the middle. B. And then all these large monuments make it look smaller.

A. Here is the monument to William Pitt<sup>1)</sup>, and all these are erected to the memory either of celebrated soldiers or statesmen. Here, behind the **choir**, is one to the founder of the Abbey, the old Saxon King Sēbert, with the date 616.

screen Schirm, Blende, (durchbrochene) Gitter choir (spr. quire) Chor.

2. B. Is that really so old as that? A. I believe so. Look, you are standing on the grave of Livingstone, the African explorer. Come through here. There is the **altar**. If we go up the steps to the rail, we get the best view of the full length of the church.

B. Yes, from here it looks very long and high, but so narrow. A. Here are some very old monuments at the side of the altar. But come this way, here are the graves of, or monuments to, all the great English poets: Chaucer<sup>2)</sup>, Spenser<sup>3)</sup>, Shakespeare<sup>4)</sup>, Milton<sup>5)</sup> and many more.

B. This, then, is the well-known "**Poets' Corner**"! Then there are the many different **chapels** to see, are they not? A. Yes. I think this one, in which is the **tomb**<sup>6)</sup> of **Edward the Confessor**<sup>7)</sup>, is the most interesting. Here are the chairs used by the kings and queens of England at their coronation. You see, under this one is the **old stone** brought from Scotland<sup>8)</sup> on which the Scottish kings used to be crowned. We will now go into **Henry VII.'s Chapel**, which is itself like an elegant little church. On this side is the tomb of Mary Stuart and on the other that of queen Elizabeth.

B. All the English sovereigns seem to be buried here. A. So they are, with very few exceptions. Now we will go and look at the **cloisters** and the old **chapter-house**<sup>9)</sup>, and then you will have had a cursory glance over the greater part of the Abbey.

B. It seems to me that one might spend a whole day here without seeing all there is to be seen (to see). But I suppose we must go now.

explore erforschen  
rail Geländer

cloister Klostergebäude  
cursory flüchtig

glance Blick

1) großer Staatsmann, von 1759—1806. 2) 1340—1400, Hauptwerk: Canterbury Tales. 3) 1553—1599, Hauptwerk: Faerie Queene (Fairy Queen). 4) 1564 bis 1616, der größte Dichter der Engländer. 5) 1608—1674, Hauptwerk: Paradise Lost. 6) über grave und tomb vgl. S. 32, 1. 7) vgl. Lesson 24, 3. 8) von Eduard I. (1272—1307). 9) Kapitelhaus, d. h. das Haus, wo die Geistlichen sich versammeln.



## Eighty-fifth Lesson.

## Continuation. A Visit to the British Musē'um.

1. *B.* This is a fine building in the **Itālian style**. It is quite mōdern, is it not? *A.* Yes, it was not finished until<sup>1)</sup> 1852. If we turn to the right from this vēstibule, we can go through the **library** first. Here are a great many very rare old books, specimens of the earliest printing.

*B.* What are there in all these **glass-cases**? *A.* Old manuscripts, the books people had before the invention of printing. There are also some ancient lēgal documents.

*B.* Look at this translation of the Bible. Is it English? I cannot make out a single sentence. *A.* It is old English, very different from what we write now.

*B.* Is the celebrated **reading-room** open to visitors? *A.* No, but if you come this way, I can get permission for you just to peep in. There, you see it is circular, lighted by a large skylight, and the walls are lined with books from floor to roof.

*B.* It is certainly an enormous collection of books.

case (s = ſ) Kasten      dōc'ūment Urkunde      skȳlight Oberlicht, Ober-  
mān'ūscript Handschrift      peep in hineingucken      lichtfenster.

2. *A.* Now we must go and look at the **Greek** and the **Rōman antiquities**, the famous **Elgin marbles**<sup>2)</sup>, and this fine frieze which was brought from the Pārthenon<sup>3)</sup>. *B.* Some of these statues are very fine.

*A.* If we pass on this way, we come to the **Egȳptian section**. See, there is the **Sphinx**<sup>4)</sup>! And many figures of kings brought from Egypt. Let us go up these steps. Here are all the **mummies**.

*B.* What is this? The **coffin** of Clēōpā'tra. They have a great many Egyptian relics.

*A.* Farther on is a fine collection of **engraved stones**, seals and so on. *B.* It is impossible to look at everything to-day. Let us go now, I am very tired. I shall try to come here for an hour now and then and look at a small portion at a time.

mārble Marmor, pl. mar-      am Hauptgesimse einer rēlic Überbleibsel, Überrest  
morne Kunstwerke      Säule [mierte Leiche engrāve eingraben, gra-  
frieze Fries, Zierrat mummy Mumie, einbalsa-      vieren, stechen.

1) not-until erst. 2) die kostbare Sammlung von griechischen Kunstschätzen, welche Lord El'gin im Anfange dieses Jahrhunderts nach England bringen ließ. 3) der bedeutendste Tempel auf der Burg (Akropolis) von Athen. 4) ein Löwenleib mit Menschenkopf, Sinnbild der Herrschaft der ägyptischen Könige.



## Eighty-sixth Lesson.

## Continuation. A Visit to Hyde Park.

1. *B.* I should like to see something of your fine parks. *A.* But you have surely been in **Hyde**<sup>1)</sup> **Park** already, have you not?

*B.* I only saw a small portion of **Kensington**<sup>2)</sup> **Gardens** when I visited the **Albert Memorial**<sup>3)</sup>. *A.* Is that all? Then we had better go there this morning. What do you think of the Albert Memorial?

*B.* It is a splendid monument. I like the statue-groups and the reliefs that run round the pedestal particularly. I don't know but what<sup>4)</sup> the figure of the prince would look just as well with a little less gilding. *A.* Yes, I think so, too. Here we are at the **Marble Arch**<sup>5)</sup>, one of the principal entrances to Hyde Park.

*B.* This is a handsome gateway; and there is another on the other side of the Park, I think. *A.* Yes, at **Hyde Park Corner**<sup>6)</sup>. We can go over there afterwards. Let us turn this way now and strike straight across the grass towards the **Serpentine**<sup>7)</sup>.

*B.* What a large sheet of water! Is it a natural lake? *A.* Oh no! It is artificial; it was laid out in the reign of George II.

|                               |                      |                      |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| memorial Denkmal              | gild vergolden       | sheet Fläche         |
| relief erhabene Arbeit        | strike eine Richtung | artificial künstlich |
| pedestal Fußgestell, Unterbau | einschlagen          | lay out anlegen.     |

2. *B.* There are some beautiful trees here, too! But what is that crowd of people over there? *A.* That is a portion of the well-known "**Rotten Row**"<sup>8)</sup>, where all the most fashionable people in London drive round and round at this time in the day.

*B.* And are all these people sitting or standing here only to look at them? *A.* I believe there is a meeting of the Coaching Club to-day; and these people are here to watch the four-in-hand coaches<sup>9)</sup> drive by. Yes, here they come! If we stand here, we, too, shall see them pass.

*B.* Some of the horses are very handsome; but what are all these coaches doing here? I counted 23. They all seem to be driven by gentlemen, too! Where are they going? *A.* They are only going

1) nach einer alten Gutsherrschaft so genannt. 2) s = z. 3) Von dem englischen Volke und der Königin Viktoria zum Andenken an ihren 1861 verstorbenen Gemahl, Albert, Prinzen von Koburg-Gotha, errichtet. 4) = but that, etwas veraltet. I don't know but what = I almost think that. 5) eine Art Triumphbogen, an der nordöstlichen Ecke. 6) an der südöstlichen Ecke. 7) „Schlangenteich“. 8) Die Ableitung ist ungewiß. 9) Kutschen mit vier Pferden davor, die vom Kutscherbock aus gelenkt werden.



for short trips into the country. But they all meet here, every now and then, to show off their fine horses and their skill in driving.

rotten verfault, faul fashionable modernmäßig, fein, elegant show off sich zeigen, sich  
rōw Reihe, Gasse coach in einer Kutsche fahren sehen lassen mit etwas.

### Eighty-seventh Lesson.

#### Continuation. A Visit to Rēgent's<sup>1)</sup> Park.

1. A. This afternoon we will visit **Regent's Park**, which, although much less fashionable, is as pretty and almost as large as Hyde Park. Near this entrance are the **Botanic Gardens**, where most of the best-kept flower-beds are. B. What a fine bed of tulips that is! The flowers seem to be at their best just now.

A. No, they are not. These are only the spring flowers which we see now; and some of them, like those hyacinths over there, are already almost over. It is not until<sup>2)</sup> the middle of July that the flowers in the London parks are in their full glory. B. Look at that avenue of young chesnuts in full bloom. To my taste, there are no summer flowers to rival them.

A. We had better turn to the right and walk along this **centre avenue**. B. What is that open space on the left?

A. That is a public **recreation ground**, where any one may play cricket and all kinds of games. A little farther on we will turn to the left to go and look at the **lake**. B. Is there a lake in this park, too?

A. Yes. There it is! You can see it now between the trees. B. A very pretty piece of ornamental water! With its islands and rustic bridges! But it is not so large as the one in Hyde Park, is it?

A. Oh no! Not nearly!

at the best auf der höch- rival Nebenbuhler; Neben- recreā'tion Erholung  
sten Stufe, in vollster buhler sein, wetteifern rüstic ländlich, einfach,  
Pracht, Blüte mit kunstlos.

2.<sup>3)</sup> A. Now let us go to the **Zoological Gardens**<sup>4)</sup>, which are in the northern part of Regent's Park. What shall we see first? Let us begin with the ugliest, the **hippopotamus**. B. What a fearful looking beast! It is a curiosity, certainly, but the most disgusting animal I ever beheld.

A. They have a young **orāng'-outang'** in this cage; but it is

1) so benannt nach dem „Prinz-Regenten“ Georg, dem spätern Könige Georg IV. (1820—1830). Vgl. hierzu Lesson 29 ff. 2) vgl. S. 86, 1. 3) No. 2 und 3 nach Waddy's Echo, S. 115 und 117. 4) dafür auch familiär the zoo (spr. zo).



so delicate, that they hardly expect to keep it alive. The change of air does not agree with its constitution at all.

*B.* This is an American **ant-eater**, is it not? *A.* It is; but let us go to the monkey-house, I always pay my respects to those gentlemen, there is more fun to be had out of them than out of all the rest of the *menagerie*<sup>1)</sup> put together.

*B.* What very elegant creatures these **giraffes** are! *A.* Yes, they seem to know it, too. In what a stately way they arch those beautiful necks, and how dignified that old fellow is in all his movements.

*B.* Give him that piece of biscuit! *A.* Don't you see that notice-board? *Visitors are respectfully requested not to feed the camelopards*<sup>2)</sup>. It is safest not to infringe any of the rules.

*B.* Come then, let us look for the **reptile-house**. *A.* Do you see that quiet-looking serpent coiled up in the corner? He looks peaceable enough, in all conscience, doesn't he?

*B.* I don't know, there is a sharp vicious twinkle about his bright eye, which looks wicked to me. What is that very large serpent, with its tail curled round that tree? *A.* A boa-constrictor.

*B.* What an unbearable noise those **cockatoos** make! Let us escape, or I shan't recover my hearing for a week.

|                          |                             |                           |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| ügly häßlich             | to pay one's respects seine | infringe übertreten       |
| cūriōs'ity (s=ß) Merkf-  | Achtung bezeugen            | coil up zusammenrollen    |
| würdigkeit               | arch wölben                 | in all conscience fürwahr |
| disgust anefeln          | dig'nified würdevoll        | vicious böshaft           |
| disgusting eßelhaft      | movement Bewegung           | twinkle Blid              |
| agree (with one) (einem) | no'tice-board Anschlag-     | unbearable unerträglich   |
| befommen                 | brett                       | cockatoo Kakadu.          |

3. *A.* This is the house where my favourites reside. I think the **elephant** is the sublimest animal on the face of the earth.

*B.* What a mercy that these enormous creatures are not conscious of their own power! What an awful howl! whence does it proceed?

*A.* From the **lion-house**, it is just about feeding time, let us see the operation performed.

*B.* Is that **tiger** always pacing round his cell in that restless and uneasy way? *B.* Yes, he is; he is a magnificent specimen of the Bengal tiger, the largest and fiercest of his class.

*B.* How he flings himself on the food which the keeper thrusts into the den! it is frightful to see him tear it to pieces; he must

1) oder spr. g = zh. 2) camēopard oder cāmelopard Giraffe, so genannt, weil sie einen so langen Hals wie das Kamel hat und so gefleckt wie der Panther oder Leopard ist.



have immense strength in his jaws, he crushes the largest bones like so much<sup>1)</sup> tinder.

A. Just look at that **baboon** crouching at the back of the cage. With what an air of satisfaction he munches the nuts he has received! B. This seems to be a very old ape.

A. I recognize him as an ancient foe of mine; he is quite a tyrant over the smaller fry. I have seen the hoary-headed old sinner chastise a younger one most unmercifully, for being lucky enough to secure some tit-bit on which he had set his heart.

B. See, he is chasing one of them now. A. It is no use, the youngster<sup>2)</sup> outstrips him. He'll burst a blood vessel some day in a fit of passionate frenzy. — We will go out at the other end now. Then we shall be opposite **Primrose Hill**, from which we shall get a capital view over London.

|            |                 |            |                        |                               |                      |
|------------|-----------------|------------|------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| fā'vourite | Liebling        | tinder     | Bunder                 | tit-bit                       | (kleiner Bissen)     |
| sublime    | erhaben         | baboon     | Pavian, Affe           | Seckerbissen                  |                      |
| awful      | schrecklich     | crouch     | sich ducken, schmiegen | to set one's heart on some-   |                      |
| whence     | von wo          | munch      | kauen, zerbeißen,      | thing auf etwas veressen      |                      |
| uneasy     | unbehaglich,    |            | schnabelieren          | sein                          | [nichts]             |
|            | unruhig         | fry        | Brut, Gezücht          | it is no use es hilft (nützt) |                      |
| fling      | werfen, stürzen | hoary      | weiß, grau             | outstrip                      | überholen, schneller |
| keeper     | Wärter          | chastise   | züchtigen, strafen     | fit                           | Anfall [sein als]    |
| crush      | zermalmen       | unmerciful | unbarmherzig           | frenzy                        | Wahnsinn, Wut.       |

### Eighty-eighth Lesson.

#### Continuation. A Visit to the Crystal Palace<sup>3)</sup>.

1. A. Come along, I have the tickets, and there is a train to the Palace due now<sup>4)</sup>. We shall just catch it, if we are quick. B. Shall we have far to walk, when we leave the train?

A. No, the station is in the grounds<sup>5)</sup> of the Palace. There is another line of railway which would have taken us almost into the Palace itself, but I chose to come this way, because we shall have such a good view of the outside, as we walk up through the gardens.

B. So, that is the **Crystal Palace**. No wonder, it is so celebrated. I was not prepared for such a large building<sup>6)</sup>.

A. Wait till you get inside! We had better walk along the terrace and go in at the end. There is a pretty view over Kent<sup>7)</sup>

1) lauter. 2) familiär, junger Bursche. 3) in Sydenham, 7 engl. Meilen südlich von London Bridge. 4) Der Zug muß jetzt gerade abfahren. 5) Grundstück, pl. liegende Gründe, Anlagen. 6) Dieser Palast diente der ersten Weltausstellung in London 1851 und wurde 1854 seinem jetzigen Zwecke übergeben; er ist 490 m lang. Die Kosten betrugen 1½ Millionen Pfund; das Baumaterial ist nur Glas und Eisen. 7) d. h. über die Grafschaft K.



from here. *B.* Yes, and the view must be magnificent from the tops of the towers<sup>1)</sup>. Can we go up one of them?

*A.* Yes. But it is very tiring to mount so many steps. We will go inside first, at any rate. *B.* Why, there are large trees growing here inside.

*A.* Yes, I think the quantity of greenery interspersed with the many statues, all in the brilliant light from the glass roof, forms the principal charm of the Palace.

catch erwischen, erhaschen at any rate auf jeden Fall intersperseeinstreuen,  
choose vorziehen greenery Grünwerk, Pflanzen= vermengen, mischen.  
tire ermüden wuchß, Laub= u. Buschwerk

2. *B.* Shall we walk down the centre? *A.* Certainly. These are all **plaster casts** from famous statues, both ancient and modern. Over there is the **great organ** in the centre of the **Händel Orchestra**<sup>2)</sup>, which accommodates a choir of more than 3000 voices on festival occasions.

*B.* Will there be any music to-day? *A.* There is to be a concert in an hour's time. We will go through the different courts now. Here are the **Greek court** and the **Egyptian court**.

*B.* I suppose these are all copies from figures that have really been found in Egypt. *A.* Yes. And across there is the **Renaissance**<sup>3)</sup> **court**, containing specimens of the finest Italian statuary. We had better go into the concert-room now and, after the concert is over, we can look at the interesting, full-sized model of a **Pompēian house** and at the **Alhambra**, an exact copy of a portion of the Moorish palace in Granâda.

plaster cast Gipsabguß copy Nachbildung full-sized in voller  
accommodate bequem unter= stät'wäre Bildhauerkunst Größe  
bringen, Platz gewähren für Moorish maurisch.

### Eighty-ninth Lesson.

Continuation. **Going down the Thames to Greenwich**<sup>4)</sup>.

1. *B.* This afternoon we are going to Greenwich, are we not?

*A.* Yes, we will take the steam-boat from **Westminster Bridge**<sup>5)</sup>.

*B.* There are some very fine buildings overlooking the river here.

1) Zwei Wassertürme an den Enden, die 86 m hoch sind. 2) vgl. Lesson 38, 2; so genannt zu Ehren des berühmten Komponisten (Oratorien) Händel, geb. zu Halle 1685, gest. zu London 1759. 3) spr. renāsongs, etwa die Zeit von 1450—1600, wo sich die Geschmacksrichtung in den bildenden Künsten wieder an das Altertum anlehnte, daher der Name „Wiedergeburt“. 4) spr. grīnich, eine Stadt mit 40 000 Einwohnern, vier engl. Meilen südöstlich von London Bridge. 5) westlich von London Bridge.



This is **Westminster Palace**<sup>1)</sup>, I know. *A.* Opposite is **St. Thomas's Hospital**. And that ancient red-brick building higher up the river is **Lambeth Palace**, the residence of the Archbishop of Canterbury<sup>2)</sup>.

*B.* This, I suppose, is the lately-reclaimed embankment on the left bank of the river. *A.* Yes. We are passing **Whitehall**<sup>3)</sup> now. That obelisk is **Cleopatra's Needle**, a monolith, which was brought from Egypt some seventeen years ago. Over there is **Somerset House**, where all the principal government offices are.

*B.* We are going to stop again, are we not? *A.* Yes, at the Temple Stairs. You have heard of the **Temple**, the great college for barristers.

*B.* I have been told that the buildings and gardens of the Temple are well worth a visit. *A.* So they are. They are very old, having belonged originally to the Knights Templars. Now we are passing under **London Bridge**. This part of the river is called the **Pool**. This is really the limit of the **Port of London**, as no large ships can pass under the bridges.

|            |                           |             |                   |         |                |
|------------|---------------------------|-------------|-------------------|---------|----------------|
| stēam-boat | Dampfboot                 | embānkment  | Eindämmung,       | knīght  | Ritter         |
| overlook'  | übersehen, über-          | Uferanlage, | Uferstraße        | templar | Tempelherr     |
|            | schauen, niederscha-      | mōnolith    | Denkmal aus einem | pool    | (großer) Teich |
| reclāim    | zurückfordern, aus        | einzigen    | Stein             | limit   | Grenze.        |
|            | einem schlechten Zustande |             |                   |         |                |
|            | entreißen, anbauen        |             |                   |         |                |

2. *B.* But I see another bridge lower down the river. I always thought London Bridge was the first<sup>4)</sup> on the Thames. *A.* That is the new **Tower Bridge**, constructed so as not to interfere with the shipping; the centre span can be raised high enough to allow the largest ships to pass under it. It is not finished yet.

*B.* And where is the **Tower of London**? *A.* Why, right before you. That square, grey building with a tower at each corner.

*B.* But that does not look like a fortress. *A.* It used to be considered an almost impregnable strong-hold. You should pay it a visit one of these days.

*B.* Look at that great (large) ship. I suppose she(it) is coming out of one of the docks. *A.* Yes, the docks stretch from here, on that side of the Thames, to a great deal farther down than we are going to-day. When we get round this bend, we shall be in sight of Greenwich. See, there it is. That handsome building is what

1) d. h. das Parlamentsgebäude. 2) vgl. S. 26, 4. 3) d. h. die Straße Wh. mit palastähnlichen Häusern, nach dem frühern, 1697 abgebrannten Schlosse Wh. so genannt; vom Flusse aus kann man freilich nicht viel davon sehen. 4) wenn man die Themse hinauffährt.



used to be the **Hospital** for disabled sailors and is now a naval training-school<sup>1)</sup>. Besides it contains a Picture Gallery and numerous models of ships. Behind the town rises **Greenwich Park** with the **Royal Observatory** on the top of the hill.

interfere with dazwischen impräg'nable uneinnehm= disabled sailor (soldier)  
 treten, Eintrag thun, bar [Festung Invalide [See-, Schiffsz=  
 schaden ströng-höld fester Platz, nāval die See betreffend,  
 shipping Schiffswesen bend Biegung train erziehen, einüben  
 span Spanne, Spannung, disāble außer Stand setzen observatory (s=z) Stern=  
 Bogen disabled unfähig, untauglich warte.

### Ninetieth Lesson.

#### Continuation. A Visit to Kew<sup>2)</sup> Gardens.

1. A. As it is such a fine day, would you like to go to **Kew Gardens** this afternoon? B. Yes, by all means! Shall we go by the steam-boat? I enjoyed our trip on the river yesterday so much.

A. I think we had better go by rail to-day. It takes so long by the boat, that we should not have time to see all there is to be seen (to see) in the Gardens. B. Very well, it is certainly getting rather late. How long does the train take to get to Kew?

A. Not more than 20 minutes or so. B. The country we are passing through is not very interesting, and there is very little to be seen of the river.

A. Here we are! Now we have only a few minutes' walk to the Gardens. B. Is this the entrance? But this is only like a well-kept park! Are these the famous **botanical gardens**?

A. Almost all those trees, that seem to grow so naturally, are specimens of more or less rare and foreign sorts, **exotics**. But I think the **hot-houses** are the most interesting, at any rate to those who are not learned in Botany.

by all means auf alle foreign ausländisch learned gelehrt, bewan=  
 Fälle, durchaus exōtic ausländisches Ge= dert, fundig.  
 well-kept gut gepflegt wächst

2. B. What a very fine **green-house**<sup>3)</sup> that is over there! A. That is the **winter-garden**. Shall we go in? This house is always kept at a high temperature, so that all kinds of palms<sup>4)</sup>, cactuses<sup>5)</sup>, tropical ferns<sup>5)</sup>, and creepers flourish here.

1) eine Schule zur Ausbildung von Seeoffizieren. 2) spr. kū, ein Dorf mit 1500 Einw., acht engl. Meilen westlich von London Bridge, mit berühmtem botanischen Garten. 3) green-house kaltes Gewächshaus, im Gegensatz zum hot-house. 4) Das Palmenhaus und Wasserlilienhaus sind besonders bekannt. 5) Die Farnkräuter, Orchideen und Kakteen sind besonders zahlreich vertreten.



*B.* This is certainly a very pretty sight. Is the celebrated water-lily in this house? *A.* Oh, no! That requires much greater heat. If we go through these smaller hot-houses, we shall come to it presently. You see this house is devoted to **orchids**<sup>1)</sup>; and the next is filled with all kinds of begōnias.

*B.* They are very fine, but, to my mind, the prettiest things here are those brilliant, flowering creepers. *A.* Here is the "**Victoria Rēgia**<sup>2)</sup>", the giant water-lily; it is not in bloom, but its leaves are the most remarkable part of it.

*B.* Yes, indeed! They must be quite four feet across. *A.* Shall we now walk through the wilder part of the garden? We shall find some very pleasant seats there, overlooking the river.

*B.* Let us do so and then walk to the **Refreshment Pavilion**<sup>3)</sup> to have a cup of coffee there.

|                                  |                             |                          |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| cactus (pl. cactuses oder cacti) | devōte (to) widmen, bestim- | refrēshment Erfrischung, |
| men (für) [Knabenfräulein]       | men (für) [Knabenfräulein]  | Erquickung, Stärkung     |
| crēeper Schlingpflanze           | orchid (orchis) Orchidee,   | pavilion (i = y) Zelt;   |
| flourish blühen, gedeihen,       | gī'ant Riese [schnitt]      | Zeltgebäude, Garten-     |
| fortkommen                       | acrōss breit (im Durch-     | haus, Sommerhaus.        |

1) vgl. S. 93, 5. 2) eine erst in diesem Jahrhundert am Amazonenstrom entdeckte, 1837 zum ersten Male genau beschriebene und der Königin Victoria gewidmete Pflanze, die unsern Seerosen ähnelt, aber viel größere, kreisförmige Blätter hat. 3) eine Restauration.





Otto Schulze Verlag in Göttingen i. Anh.

---

## The English Intellect

during  
the XVI<sup>th</sup>, XVII<sup>th</sup> and XVIII<sup>th</sup> centuries  
by

Henry Thomas Buckle.

Mit einem pädagogischen Kommentar  
zusammengestellt von

Dr. Heinrich Supe,

Oberlehrer am Katharineum in Lübeck.

== Text und Kommentar, 2 Teile. ==

Eleg. kart. 1,40 Mk.

---

## A Christmas Carol

in Prose

as arranged and read  
by

Charles Dickens.

Mit Anmerkungen und „His Life and Writings“

für den Schulgebrauch in der Prima

herausgegeben von

Dr. Heinrich Supe,

Oberlehrer am Katharineum in Lübeck.

== Text und Kommentar, 2 Teile. ==

Eleg. kart. 1,40 Mk.

---

## Zusammenhängende Übersetzungsübungen

im Anschluß an zwei Kapitel

von

Th. Buckle's History of Civilisation

und

sämtliche Regeln der Syntax

in systematischer Stufenfolge und mit Anmerkungen

besonders für die Prima der höheren Reallehranstalten

zusammengestellt von

Dr. Heinrich Supe,

Oberlehrer am Katharineum in Lübeck.

Eleg. kart. 1 Mk.



Theoretisch = praktischer  
**Lehrgang der englischen Sprache**

mit genügender Berücksichtigung der Aussprache

von

**Dr. A. Deutschbein.**

Fünfzehnte Auflage. — 1893. — Preis: 3 Mark.

---

Kurzgefaßte  
**Englische Grammatik und Übungsstücke**

für reifere Schüler,

insbesondere für die Oberklassen der Gymnasien

von

**Dr. A. Deutschbein.**

Vierte Auflage. — 1893. — Preis: 1 Mark 80 Pf.

---

**Leitfaden für den englischen Unterricht.**

Auf Grund der neuen preussischen Lehrpläne von 1892

verfaßt von

**Dr. A. Deutschbein und Dr. G. Willenberg.**

I. Teil: Elementarbuch.

1893. — Preis: 1 Mark 20 Pf.

II. Teil: Syntax.

1894. — Preis: 2 Mark.

---

**Übungssätze und Musterbriefe**  
 zur Einführung in die  
**Englische Handelskorrespondenz.**

Von

**A. Wikel und Dr. A. Deutschbein.**

Fünfte Auflage. — 1892. — Preis: kartoniert 1 Mark.







5

Die „Systematische Englische Konversationschule, Vokabel- und Hilfsbuch für die Lektüre und Vorkommnisse des täglichen Lebens, von Dr. Karl Deutschbein“ besteht aus 3 Teilen:

|               |                    |               |        |
|---------------|--------------------|---------------|--------|
| Erster Teil:  | School Life.       | Preis brosch. | 80 Pf. |
| Zweiter Teil: | Every Day Life.    | „ „           | 100 „  |
| Dritter Teil: | Wörterverzeichnis. | „ „           | 30 „   |

Jeder Teil kann einzeln, broschiert oder kartoniert, bezogen werden.

Sämtliche 3 Teile sind auch in einen Band fest und gut gebunden zu beziehen.

---



Deutschbein, Karl,

Systematische Englische Konversationsschule Vokabel- und Hilfsbuch für die  
Lektüre und Vorkommnisse des täglichen Lebens mit besonderer Berü  
cksichtigung englischer Verhältnisse, auf Grund der neuen Lehrpläne und  
Lehrordnungen von 1891 und 1892  
Bd.: 2

1894

41.2305-1/2

urn:nbn:de:bvb:12-bsb11533948-5